Regulation of secondary compounds synthesis by photosynthetic organisms under stress
Parisa Heydarizadeh

To cite this version:

HAL Id: tel-01316536
https://tel.archives-ouvertes.fr/tel-01316536
Submitted on 9 Jun 2016

HAL is a multi-disciplinary open access archive for the deposit and dissemination of scientific research documents, whether they are published or not. The documents may come from teaching and research institutions in France or abroad, or from public or private research centers.

L’archive ouverte pluridisciplinaire HAL, est destinée au dépôt et à la diffusion de documents scientifiques de niveau recherche, publiés ou non, émanant des établissements d’enseignement et de recherche français ou étrangers, des laboratoires publics ou privés.
Regulation of secondary compounds synthesis by photosynthetic organisms under stress
Acknowledgments

I would like to thank my supervisor Professor Benoît Schoefs for his patient guidance, encouragement, support and expertise throughout my graduate experience. At many stages in the course of this research project I benefited from his advice, particularly so when exploring new ideas. His positive outlook and confidence in my research inspired me and gave me confidence. His careful editing contributed enormously to the production of this thesis.

I would also wish to sincere gratitude to my co-supervisor Dr. Justine Marchand for her constant support, guidance, motivation, advice and confidence. I would like to thank my second co-supervisor Dr. Véronique Martin-Jézéquel for her valuable helps and supports. It would never have been possible for me to take this work to completion without their support and encouragement.

I wish to appreciate the member of committee Dr. Jean-Paul Cadoret, Professor Fabrice Franck, Professor Soulaiman Sakr and Professor Marc-André Selosse for their careful editing and endurance. I thank again Dr. Jean-Paul Cadoret and Professor Fabrice Franck to accept to review my thesis.

During my Ph.D. work, I benefited greatly from many fruitful discussions with Brigitte Moreau. I cannot forget the valuable helps of her. I would like to thank Wafaa Boureba and Bing Huang for their help in the lab.

I have a special thank to Dr. Martine Bertrand and Professor Annick Morant-Manceau, who not only helped me in science, but because of the confidante and also good moments they offered to me. I also wish to thank Fanny Laude-Molina that without her helps my stay in France would not be possible.

I wish to say thank to the other people who worked in the lab to progress this thesis, Dr. Ewa Lukomska, Dr. Gaël Bougaran, Dr. Gaëlle Wielgosz and Dr. Aurélie Couzinet.

From Iran's side, I would like to thank my supervisor Dr. Morteza Zahedi for his patient, guidance and support. I would like to extend my sincerest thanks and appreciation to my two co-supervisors Dr. Hosein Zeinali and Dr. Farhad Rejali for their helps and encouragements.

I thank Dr. Mohammad reza Sabzalian and Dr. Ehsan Ataii for their help and supports. Furthermore, I appreciate the support of Isfahan University of Technology (IUT).

I wish to thank all of those people in both universities, Doctoral school VENAM, Région “Pays de la Loire”, Pres LUNAM, Foreign Office of the Republic of France in which this thesis work could not have been done without their generous assistance and helps.

Finally, I wish to express my heartfelt gratitude and special thanks to my family specially my father and my mother, my life supporters.
3.3.11 Primer design........................................................................................................................................78
3.3.12 mRNA sampling and extraction...............................................................................................................78
3.3.13 Real-time quantitative PCR and analyses.................................................................................................78
3.4 Results..........................................................................................................................................................79
3.4.1 Effect of light intensity on the growth of *Phaeodactylum tricornutum*..................................................79
3.4.2 N and C fluxes to lipid, carbohydrate and protein...............................................................................80
3.4.3 Pigment content.......................................................................................................................................83
3.4.4 Photosynthetic and respiratory activities...............................................................................................84
3.4.5 Photochemical and non-photochemical quenching analysis.................................................................86
3.4.6 *In silico* reconstruction of *Phaeodactylum tricornutum* central carbon metabolism................88
  3.4.6.1 Central metabolism...............................................................................................................................88
  3.4.6.2 CO₂ supply.........................................................................................................................................91
  3.4.6.3 The fate of photosynthetically fixed CO₂........................................................................................93
  3.4.7 Changes in selected gene expression during growth............................................................................93
  3.4.7.1 Light intensity influenced expression of genes in different growth phases..................................96
3.5 Discussion.....................................................................................................................................................98
  3.5.1 Growth..................................................................................................................................................98
  3.5.2 The stationary phase: adaptation to carbon deficiency conditions.....................................................102
  3.5.3 Adapting to low light condition...........................................................................................................106
  3.5.4 High light adaptation.............................................................................................................................107
  3.5.5 Influence of light intensity on the regulation of different pathways ..................................................108
3.6 Acknowledgments......................................................................................................................................110
3.7 References ..................................................................................................................................................110
3.8 Supplemental data......................................................................................................................................119
  Supplemental data 3.1: *Phaeodactylum tricornutum* growth curve........................................................119
  Supplemental data 3.2: Cellular pigment quota ............................................................................................120
  Supplemental data 3.3: Net photosynthesis and respiratory activities.......................................................121
  Supplemental data 3.4: Kinetic of Chl a fluorescence Management of the incoming light energy.........................................................................................................................................................122
  Supplemental data 3.5: Photosynthesis irradiance curve.............................................................................125
  Supplemental data 3.6: List of enzymes and related genes ........................................................................127
  Supplemental data 3.7: An integrated model for central carbon metabolism in *Phaeodactylum tricornutum*.................................................................................................................................................130
  Supplemental data 3.8: Heatmap of up or down-regulated genes under different light intensities .................131
5.5.2 Conclusion ........................................................................................................................................... 184
5.6 Acknowledgment ....................................................................................................................................... 185
5.7 References .................................................................................................................................................. 185
6 Photosynthesis under artificial light: the shift in primary and secondary metabolism
........................................................................................................................................................................... 187
6.1 Abstract ...................................................................................................................................................... 187
6.2 Introduction .................................................................................................................................................. 188
6.3 Artificial light sources for photosynthesis ................................................................................................. 189
6.4. Changing light intensity and quality ........................................................................................................... 189
6.4.1 Light-emitting diode light(s) can sustain normal plant growth ............................................................. 189
6.4.2 Chloroplast differentiation and de-differentiation ................................................................................. 190
6.4.3 High fluence light-emitting diode triggers production of secondary compounds .......... 191
6.4.4 Modification of the metabolism through supplemental monochromatic lighting ...... 193
6.5 Photosynthesis in the light of future advances ....................................................................................... 194
6.6 Acknowledgments ....................................................................................................................................... 196
6.7 References .................................................................................................................................................. 196
6.8 Supplemental data ....................................................................................................................................... 199
Supplemental data 6.1. Artificial light sources used in plant cultivation ......................................................... 199
7 High performance of vegetables, flowers, and medicinal plants in a red-blue LED incubator for indoor plant production ........................................................................................................... 201
7.1 Abstract ...................................................................................................................................................... 201
7.2 Introduction .................................................................................................................................................. 202
7.3 Material and methods .................................................................................................................................. 204
7.3.1 Growth chamber construction ................................................................................................................ 204
7.3.2 Light control system ............................................................................................................................... 204
7.3.3 Mint growth evaluation .......................................................................................................................... 206
7.3.4 Green and potted flower cultivation ...................................................................................................... 206
7.3.5 Statistical analysis .................................................................................................................................. 206
7.4 Results and discussion ............................................................................................................................... 207
7.4.1 LED light effects on plant growth .......................................................................................................... 207
7.4.2 LED light effects on mint essential oil .................................................................................................. 212
7.5 Conclusion .................................................................................................................................................. 212
7.6 Acknowledgments ....................................................................................................................................... 213
7.7 References .................................................................................................................................................. 213
8 The effects of light and mycorrhizal symbiosis on growth parameters and essential oil of three mint species ...................................................................................................................................... 216
8.1 Abstract ...................................................................................................................................................... 216
8.2 Introduction .................................................................................................................................................. 216
8.3 Material and Methods ............................................................................................................................... 217
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8.3.1 Mycorrhizal inoculation</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3.2 Growth chamber condition</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3.3 Statistical analysis</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.4 Results</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.4.1 Development of <em>Mentha</em> species and AMF under different light conditions</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.4.2 Essential oil content under different lights</td>
<td>221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.5 Discussion</td>
<td>221</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.6 Acknowledgment</td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.7 References</td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conclusion of part 2</td>
<td>230</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 General conclusion and perspective</td>
<td>231</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ΔpH</td>
<td>pH gradient across the thylakoid membrane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AM</td>
<td>Arbuscular Mycorrhiza</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AMF</td>
<td>Arbuscular Mycorrhizal Fungi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATP</td>
<td>Adenosine TriPhosphate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA</td>
<td>Carbonic Anhydrase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cDNA</td>
<td>Complementary DNA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CF</td>
<td>Coupling factor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chl</td>
<td>Chlorophyll</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CoA</td>
<td>CoEnzyme A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cx</td>
<td>molecules containing x Carbon atoms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cytbf</td>
<td>Cytochrome b6/f</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHA</td>
<td>DocosaHexaenoic Acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMAPP</td>
<td>DiMethylAllyl diPhosphate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EO</td>
<td>Essential Oil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPA</td>
<td>EicosaPentaenoic Acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fo</td>
<td>basic chlorophyll Fluorescence level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fm</td>
<td>Maximal chlorophyll Fluorescence level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G6P</td>
<td>Glucose 6Phosphate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAP</td>
<td>GlycerAldehyde3P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GES</td>
<td>GEraniol Synthase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GGPP</td>
<td>GeranylGeranyl diPhosphate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPP</td>
<td>Geranyl diPhosphate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPT</td>
<td>G6P Phosphate Translocator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPP</td>
<td>Isopentenyl diPhosphate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LED</td>
<td>Light emitting Diodes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LHC</td>
<td>LightHarvesting Complex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEP</td>
<td>MethylErythritol 4Phosphate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mRNA</td>
<td>Messenger RNA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NPQ</td>
<td>Non-photochemical Quenching</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NADPH</td>
<td>Nicotinamide Adenine Dinucleotide Phosphate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nudix</td>
<td>family of enzymes catalyzes the hydrolysis of aNUcleoside Diposphate lNked to another moiety X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OEC</td>
<td>Oxygen Evolving Complex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAR</td>
<td>Photosynthetically Active Radiation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PEPC1</td>
<td>PhosphoEnolPyruvate Carboxylase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PEP</td>
<td>PhosphoEnolPyruvate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PGT</td>
<td>Peltate Glandular Trichomes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSI</td>
<td>PhotoSystem I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSII</td>
<td>PhotoSystem II</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PUFA</td>
<td>PolyUnsaturated Fatty Acids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSY</td>
<td>Phytoene SYnthase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QA</td>
<td>Quinone A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q_B</td>
<td>Quinone B or plastoquinone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RC</td>
<td>Reaction Center</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RhNUDX</td>
<td><em>Rosa x hybrida</em> NUDiX hydrolase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TAG</td>
<td>TriAcylGlyceride</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Since the neolithic revolution, some 15000 years ago, the importance of plants for the human societies never cessed to grow. Although they are used not only as sources for textiles, medicine and energy, but also they are mostly used as a source of food. Their success as source of food resides on the fact that they perform oxygenic photosynthesis, a process allowing them to build organic molecules using water, carbon dioxide and light as a source of energy. A waste of the process is molecular oxygen.

After a complex serie of biochemical reactions, the carbon atoms are combined to produce building block molecules \textit{i.e.} fatty acids, amino acids and simple sugars such as sucrose that are in turn used as a source of energy or to synthesis more complex compounds such as lipids and proteins. The complex set of reactions involved in these syntheses is referred as the primary metabolism. It provides basic processes like photosynthesis, respiration, growth, development with building blocks, mostly carbohydrates, lipids and proteins. This metabolism is of great importance because it provides the living biomass from which the whole biosphere relies for growth and development.

Plants being mostly nonmotile organisms have to face with the modifications of their biotic and/or abiotic environmental factors. Good examples of these factors are appearance of pathogens, modifications of the growth temperature and/or light intensity. These modifications of the environmental constraints may have different timespan and therefore are susceptible to affect differently plant functioning depending on their duration. Along evolution, plants have acquired several defense mechanisms that can be activated to cope as a response to environmental changes. Among these mechanisms, the reorientation of the metabolism (Figure 1.1) toward the production of secondary metabolites such as phenolic compounds (\textit{e.g.}, anthocyanins, tannins, lignin), nitrogenerated compounds (\textit{e.g.}, alkaloids) and terpenes (\textit{e.g.} essential oils, terpenoids, \textit{etc.}) is very common (Ramawat et al. 2009).
Figure 1.1. Scheme presenting the effects of a stress on the metabolism orientation in a cell (car: carotenoids).

By definition, secondary metabolites are compounds that are not necessary for cell but play important role in the interactions of the organisms with their environment (Gandhi et al. 2015). As primary metabolites, secondary metabolites have a considerable interest for human societies, serving as odoriferous, spices, colorants for food and textile and medicine (e.g., Gandhi et al. 2015; Adolffson et al. 2015). Healing with medicinal plants is as old as mankind itself. The oldest written evidence of medicinal plants usage for preparation of drugs has been found on a Sumerian clay slab from Nagpur (India), approximately 5000 years old (Kelly, 2009). Since this pioneer record, the pharmacopea greatly enriched and today, mint is one of the most important medicinal and aromatic plants that has been widely used in food, flavoring, traditional medicine, in cosmetics and pharmaceutical industries (Park et al. 2002; Bhat et al. 2002; Lange et al. 2011).

The clear separation between primary and secondary metabolism is vanishing when internal factors such as the concentration in phytohormones are considered and when secondary metabolites are produced by a restricted number of cells within a tissue producing only primary compounds. A good example is the peltate glandular trichomes.
(PGT) of aromatic plants such as mint, the model plant used for my work, that produce essential oil (EO) by the direction of primary metabolites from mesophyll cells toward PGT. This is why in this manuscript I have chosen the term ‘reorientation of the metabolism’ instead of ‘secondary production’.

Beside land plants, algae1 are another type of organisms performing oxygenic photosynthesis. Plants and algae have originated through a primary endosymbiosis, a process where a non-photosynthetic eukaryote engulfed a cyanobacterium, thereby acquiring a photosynthetic apparatus that became housed within an organelle surrounded by two membranes and it conveniently explains the monophyletic origins of all plastids within eukaryotic cells (Facchinelli & Weber, 2011; Prihoda et al. 2012). This initial endosymbiotic event diverged in the green and red algal lineages, as well as to the Glaucophytes (Figure 1.2). Land plants arose following the evolution of multicellularity within the green algal lineage. In contrast with the evolution of land plants and green algae, the evolutionary history of diatoms is believed to have followed a rather different path. Generally, they have originated from a second non-photosynthetic eukaryote that engulfed a green or a red microalga through a secondary endosymbiosis, resulting a plastid surrounded by four membranes (Gould et al. 2008; Solymosi, 2012). It is believed that a single event is at the origin of the whole Chromalveolata super group, which comprises Heterokonts (also known as Stramenopiles, and to which the diatoms belong), Alveolates (Ciliates, Apicomplexans, and Dinoflagellates), Haptophytes, Cryptophytes, and perhaps also Rhizaria (Facchinelli & Weber, 2011; Prihoda et al. 2012; Kroth 2015). However the question about the number of secondary endosymbioses is still under debate (Keeling, 2013; Kroth, 2015). Regardless to this aspect of the evolution history diatoms, plants and green algae share many similarities at the biochemistry and cell physiology levels. For instance, land plants and diatoms are able to reorientate their metabolism toward the production of secondary metabolites of the terpenoid family, although of different natures. Plants from the Lamiaceae’s botanical family produce essential oil composed by C_{10} monoterpenoids whereas diatoms accumulate C_{18}-C_{22} polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFAs) (Figure 1.3) (reviewed in Mimouni et al. 2012; see also chapter 4). Nevertheless, because land plants and diatoms evolutionary diverged rapidly, diatoms exhibit unique properties. Convincing evidences are the presence of several carbon concentration mechanisms, full urea cycle, unique pigments and/or lipid compositions and the presence of silica frustules.

Despite a long history of usage, the first written traces about the use of microalgae dates back 2000 years to the Chinese who used Nostoc to survive during famine. The role of microalgae in the biosphere as well as their potential remain rather confidential.

---

1 In this text, the term ‘microalga’ has been considered to its broad sense, i.e. unicellular photosynthetic micro-organisms and therefore, includes cyanobacteria.
until recently (Borowitzka, 1999). Microalgae, especially diatoms (Bacillariophyceae),
the second model used in this study, constitute strong oxygen emitter and are
responsible for a large part (up to 41%–50%) of the CO₂ fixed in oceans (Field et al.
1998; Williams & Laurens, 2010).

Figure 1.2. Schematic view of plastid evolution in the history of photosynthetic
eukaryotes. The uptake of a cyanobacterium resulted in a photosynthetic plantae ancestor
which subsequently gave rise to the three lineages containing primary plastids: the
Chlorophytes (including green algae and the land plants), the Rhodophytes, and the
Glaucophytes. The subsequent secondary endosymbioses of green and red algae engulfed by
different hosts resulted in the Euglenophyta and Chlorarachniophyta (greens) and in the
possibly monophyletic Chromalveolates (reds) that are devided into four major subgroup, i.e.
Heterokontophyta/stramenopiles, Cryptophyta, Haptophyta and Alveolata (Facchinelli &

In the past, microalgae played a crucial role in the formation of crude oil deposits in
ocean floors, which are a rich natural source of fossil fuel (Shukla & Mohan, 2012). This
contribution continues today because algae are responsible for a large fraction of the
organic carbon being buried on continental margins (Smetacek, 1999).
Actually, the human population is up to 7.2 billion people alive today and is expected to coast upward to 9.6 billion by 2050 and 10.9 billion by 2100 (Sullivan, 2014). Several reasons including contribution of human to the acceleration of the depletion in natural resources (Alexandratos & Bruinsma, 2012), increasing the prices of raw materials based on these resources in markets and potentially change the Earth’s climate have increased dramatically the interest for microalgae. This make them as many as major alternative sources of compounds such as polysaccharides, lipids, polyunsaturated fatty acids and pigments (Table 1.1) (land plants: Schoefs, 2002, 2005; microalgae: Cadoret et al. 2012; Mimouni et al. 2012; Hudek et al. 2014) and energy sources, including via genetic engineering and nanotechnology (Monica & Cremonini, 2009; Gordon & Seckbach, 2012; Mimouni et al. 2012; Carrier et al. 2014; Ge et al. 2014). Also their important applications for food, health, cosmetic, waste treatment, energy or pharmaceutical industries are considered (Schoefs, 2003; Gordon & Seckbach, 2012; Mimouni et al. 2012; Gandhi et al. 2015; Gateau et al. 2015).

The production of many of these compounds results from the reorientation of the carbon metabolism toward the production of secondary metabolites (Vinayak et al. 2015). As reflected by the dramatic increase of publications and patents presented in figure 1.4, the field of microalga has become very attractive and this development is strongly impacted the microalgal biotechnology as a topic that began to develop in the middle of the last century (Borowitzka, 1999). Commercial large-scale culture started in the early 1960’s in Japan and the first aquaculture fields appeared in the 1970’s (Muller Feuga, 1996; Pulz & Scheibenbogen, 1998; Borowitzka, 1999; Iwamoto, 2004).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phylum</th>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Taxonomy</th>
<th>Oil Content (% d.w.)</th>
<th>High Molecules</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chlorophyta</td>
<td>Chlorodendrophyceae</td>
<td><em>Tetraselmis suecica</em></td>
<td>15–32</td>
<td>Carotenoids, chlorophyll, tocoopherol, lipids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorophyta</td>
<td>Chlorophyceae</td>
<td><em>Ankistrodesmus</em> sp.</td>
<td>28–40</td>
<td>Mycosporinelike amino acids, polysaccharides</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorophyta</td>
<td>Chlorophyceae</td>
<td><em>Dunaliella salina</em></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Carotenoid, β-carotene, mycosporinelike amino acids, sporopollenin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorophyta</td>
<td>Chlorophyceae</td>
<td><em>Dunaliella tertiolecta</em></td>
<td>36–42</td>
<td>Carotenoid, β-carotene, mycosporinelike amino acids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorophyta</td>
<td>Chlorophyceae</td>
<td><em>Neochloris oleoabundans</em></td>
<td>35–65</td>
<td>Fatty acids, starch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorophyta</td>
<td>Trebouxiophyceae</td>
<td><em>Botryococcus braunii</em></td>
<td>29–75</td>
<td>Isobutyrycococene, botryocococene, triterpenes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorophyta</td>
<td>Trebouxiophyceae</td>
<td><em>Chlorella vulgaris</em></td>
<td>58</td>
<td>Neutral lipids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorophyta</td>
<td>Trebouxiophyceae</td>
<td><em>Chlorella emersonii</em></td>
<td>34</td>
<td>Neutral lipids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorophyta</td>
<td>Trebouxiophyceae</td>
<td><em>Chlorella protothecoides</em></td>
<td>15–55</td>
<td>EPA, ascorbic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chlorophyta</td>
<td>Trebouxiophyceae</td>
<td><em>Chlorella minutissima</em></td>
<td>57</td>
<td>C16 and C18 lipids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heterokontophyta</td>
<td>Bacillariophyceae</td>
<td><em>Nitzchia laevi</em></td>
<td>28–69</td>
<td>EPA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heterokontophyta</td>
<td>Coscinodiscophyceae</td>
<td><em>Thalassiosira pseudonana</em></td>
<td>21–31</td>
<td>Glycosylglycerides, neutral lipids, TAG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heterokontophyta</td>
<td>Labrynthulomycetes</td>
<td><em>Schizochytrium limacinum</em></td>
<td>50–77</td>
<td>Docosahexaenoic acid (DHA)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myzozoa</td>
<td>Peridinea</td>
<td><em>Cryptothecodinium cohnii</em></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>DHA, Starch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ochrophyta</td>
<td>Coscinodiscophyceae</td>
<td><em>Cyclotella sp.</em></td>
<td>42</td>
<td>Neutral lipids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ochrophyta</td>
<td>Eustigmatophyceae</td>
<td><em>Nannochloropsis</em> sp.</td>
<td>46–68</td>
<td>EPA, TAG, ω3 LCPUFA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Thus, in a short period of about 30 years, the microalgal biotechnology industry has grown and diversified significantly. Nowadays, the microalgal biomass market produces about 5000 T of dry matter/year but remains ‘confidential’ regarding to that of land plants in terms of production (10^6 times less than land plants) (Prof. Dussap, personal communication). Interestingly, the actual market generates a turnover of approximately US$ 125 million in 2004, US$ 271 million in 2010 and US$ 1.6 billion in 2015 (Pulz & Gross, 2004; http://www.biodieselmagazine.com/articles/8604/reportalgaebiofuels technologiesmarketat16bin2015). On the other hand, the global market for botanical and plant-derived drugs has been increased from US$ 19.5 billion in 2008 to US$ 32.9 billion in 2013, with an annual growth rate of 11.0% (Trakranrungsie, 2011).
1.1 The photosynthetic process in land plants and diatoms

Oxygenic photosynthesis is a biophysicochemical process that converts carbon dioxide into organic compounds using sunlight as a source of energy. In land plants, as in diatoms, photosynthesis takes place in the chloroplasts, and uses water as a source of electrons, releasing oxygen as a waste product (for a recent review, see Hohmann-Marriott & Blankenship, 2011). As mentioned above, the chloroplast in algae and plants has evolved from a cyanobacterial ancestor via endosymbiosis with a primitive eukaryotic host. The chloroplast is a highly compartmentalized organelle, with three membrane systems (outer envelope, inner envelope, and thylakoids) and three soluble spaces (intermembrane space, stroma, and thylakoid lumen) (Figure 1.5.A). A major difference between land plant and diatom chloroplasts resides in the presence of additional surrounding membranes outside the double envelope. They are generally termed periplastid membrane(s) or periplastid/chloroplast endoplasmic reticulum (Solymosi, 2012). The origin of these outer plastid enveloping membranes is still under debate (reviewed in Cavalier-Smith, 2003, 2007; Keeling, 2004; Solymosi, 2012).
Figure 1.5 (A) Structure of chloroplast in land plants, (B) Comparison of the organization of the photosynthetic complexes within thylakoid membranes (Pfeil et al. 2014).

Thylakoid membranes in diatoms (shown in brown) are arranged in groups of three and contain fucoxanthin–chlorophyllprotein complexes for harvesting light (Bertrand, 2010). Note the fourlayer envelopes surrounding the chloroplast as compared to the types found in land plants. Thylakoid membranes in land plants (shown in green) are located inside the chloroplast. They are organized in grana stacks (5–20 vesicles) interconnected by stromaexposed lamellae, and contain chlorophyll–protein complexes for harvesting light (Mustárdy & Garab, 2003).

The photosynthetic apparatus is composed of four multisubunit complexes, namely the wateroxidizing photosystem II (PSII), cytochromeb6/f (cytbf), photosystem I (PSI), and the H+-translocating ATP synthase (CF0F1) (Nelson & Ben Shem, 2004). These complexes are laterally distributed in land plants, whereas in diatoms, they display a more uniform distribution.

It is mentioned here because some important enzymes involved in the carbon metabolism, namely carbonic anhydrase (CA) and phosphoenolpyruvate carboxylase (PEPC1), have been predicted to be localized in this unique compartment (Solymosi, 2012; Matsuda & Kroth, 2014; see chapter 3). The organization of the thylakoids also
differs in the two models. In land plants, these membranes are organized in highly stacked (appressed) regions, the so-called grana. Grana are interconnected by stroma-exposed (nonappressed) regions (Figure 1.5.B). In diatoms, the photosynthetic membranes display groups of 3 weakly stacked thylakoids (for details see Solymosi, 2012 and Figure 1.5).

The photosynthetic apparatus is composed of four macrocomplexes, namely the water-oxidizing PSII, cytbf, PSI, and the H+-translocating ATP synthase (CF0F1) (Nelson & Ben Shem, 2004). They supply ATP and NADPH for the synthesis of many essential compounds, such as carbohydrates, for autotrophic growth. A PS is composed of a reaction center (RC) and a light harvesting complex (LHC). Two families of pigments are found in LHCs, namely tetrapyrroles and carotenoids. In all photosynthetic organisms, except for most cyanobacteria and red algae, Chlorophyll (Chl) a is aided in its task of harvesting light by accessory pigments, namely other types of Chl (Chl c in diatoms and Chl b in land plants) and carotenoids (Table 1.2). In diatoms, the major carotenoid is fucoxanthin, an allenic ketocarotenoid (Table 1.2). Other important carotenoids in diatoms are the diadinoxanthin and diatoxanthin due to their involvement in the xanthophyll cycle (Bertrand, 2010, Moulin et al. 2010) (Table 1.2). The xanthophyll cycle is a reaction of de-epoxidation triggered by the acidification of the thylakoid lumen.

In land plants, the major carotenoids are lutein and violaxanthin. Other important carotenoids are β-carotene, neoxanthin and zeaxanthin. This last one is involved with violaxanthin in the xanthophyll cycle. The purpose of accessory pigments is to enlarge the range of wavelengths collected by LHCs (Hohmann-Marriott & Blankenship, 2011). In addition to their role in harvesting light, carotenoids play crucial roles in thylakoid organization (Inwooda et al. 2008), in photoprotection of Chl molecules and dissipation of excess energy, for instance, through operation of the xanthophyll cycle (Bertrand, 2010; Goss & Jakob, 2010; Moulin et al. 2011).

Despite the distinct carotenoid composition of brown algae, diatoms and land plants (Table 1.2) they all share a role in photoprotection that includes the xanthophyll cycle (Moulin et al. 2011). Due to lack of space, a detailed comparison of the arrangement of pigments within PSI, PSII and associated LHCs will not be described here, but the interested reader will find relevant information in several recent reviews (Neilson & Durnford, 2010; Busch & Hippler, 2011; Hohmann-Marriott & Blankenship, 2011; Sozer et al. 2011).

It was held for a long time that the different macro-complexes comprising the photosynthetic apparatus were organized linearly along the thylakoid membranes. If this view is still valid for diatoms, (Grouneva et al. 2011) (Figure 1.6), it is no longer accepted for land plants since it has been established that these complexes are laterally
Table 1.2. Main chlorophyll and carotenoid types in the various taxons of photosynthetic organisms (Pfeil et al. 2014, Heydarizadeh et al. 2013).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pigment type</th>
<th>Diatoms</th>
<th>Land plants</th>
<th>Chemical structure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chl $a$</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Chemical structure" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chl $b$</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Chemical structure" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chl $c$</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Chemical structure" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b-carotene</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Chemical structure" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fucoxanthin</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Chemical structure" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diadinoxanthin</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Chemical structure" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diatoxanthin</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Chemical structure" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Violaxanthin</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Chemical structure" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lutein</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Chemical structure" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zeaxanthin</td>
<td>Traces</td>
<td>+</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Chemical structure" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Xanthophyll cycle</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Chemical structure" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

distributed, \textit{i.e.} localized exclusively in the appressed membranes (PSII), exclusively in the stromaexposed thylakoids (PSI and ATP synthase) or in both types of membranes (cytbf; Anderson, 2002) (Figure 1.6).

The differences in thylakoid membrane organization among diatoms and land plants may have implications for biogenesis and turnover of photosynthetic complexes. Because these aspects were not considered in this work, they are not detailed here and the interested reader is requested to consult specialized publications on that topic (Daum & Kühlbrandt, 2011; Austin & Staehelin, 2011).

From the functional point of view, the photons that are harvested by the LHC are directed to the RC of PSII. There, they trigger the release of one electron from one of the two Chl $a$ molecules of the RC.
Figure 1.6. The ATP and NADPH that are generated along the photosynthetic apparatus are for CO2 fixation and transformation into organic compounds (Roháček et al. 2008).

This electron is first transferred to the primary acceptor \( Q_A \) (one electron acceptor) and then to the second electron acceptor \( Q_B \) (two electron acceptor). The changes in the redox state of \( Q_A \) are reflected by the intensity of the fluorescence emitted by the Chl molecules of the LHC (Duysens & Sweers, 1963): when \( Q_A \) is oxidized, the level of Chl fluorescence is minimum. This level is denoted \( F_0 \). When \( Q_A \) is reduced the Chl fluorescence is maximum. This level is denoted \( F_M \). Using these values, the maximum quantum yield of PSII photochemistry can be calculated (for details, see chapter 3). The recording of these chlorophyll fluorescence levels in a sample containing billions of PSII require that all the \( Q_A \) are oxidized or reduced simultaneously (Roháček et al. 2008). This can be obtained by placing the samples in complete darkness for 15 min or by illuminating it with a saturating light, respectively. The electron gap at the RC is filled using an electron coming from the oxidation of a water molecules by the oxygen evolving complex (OEC) that releases oxygen molecules and protons in the thylakoid lumen (Figure 1.6). The rate of oxygen evolving thus reflects the photosynthesis activity.

Once \( Q_B^2 \) has accumulated two electrons, it leaves PSII to deliver the electrons to the cytbf. Because charged molecules are unable to cross hydrophobic media such a membrane, \( Q_B^2 \) binds 2 protons from the stroma and it is actually \( Q_BH_2 \) that it is crossing the thylakoids membranes until \( Q_BH_2 \) pocket of cytbf, located at the other side of the membrane. While the electrons are delivered, the cotransported protons are released to the lumen of the thylakoids. The electrons are then transferred to the PSI where they
are used for production of NADPH. The protons that are delivered in the lumen are transported back to the stroma through the activity of the ATP synthase (Figure 1.6). The biochemical reactions leading to these compounds are common or similar in land plants and diatoms and are described in details in chapter 3. Consequently, they will not be described here.

Under stressless condition, the rate of proton delivery into the lumen is in equilibrium with the rate of proton movement from the lumen to the stroma. In case of stress, for instance during an intense irradiation, the equilibrium is broken and protons accumulate in the lumen, creating a trans-thylakoidal pH gradient (ΔpH). Lumen acidification triggers the xanthophyll cycle, a molecular device aiming to dissipate the excess of energy. It consists in the reversible de-epoxidation of epoxy-xanthophylls (violaxanthin in land plants and diadinoxanthin in diatoms (Moulin et al. 2010)). To summarize, a proportion of the energy captured by the LHC is used to extract electron from the Chl molecules located in the RC. This proportion is called the photochemical quenching. The rest of the captured energy is dissipated into other mechanisms that are collectively referred as non-photochemical quenching (NPQ). After a continuous illumination, the NPQ relaxes. The analysis of the relaxation kinetic using a nonlinear regression procedure (Roháček, 2010; Roháček et al. 2014) revealed three main components with different shapes, constant rate and underlying mechanisms (Table 1.3). In both models the xanthophyll cycle is the main energy dissipation pathway under short term stress conditions (Roháček, 2010; Roháček et al. 2014).

The ATP and NADPH that are generated along the photosynthetic apparatus are used for CO₂ fixation and its transformation into building blocks molecules (Figure 1.7). In brief, storage carbohydrates (chrysolaminarin (polymer of β(1→3) and β(1→6) linked

Table 1.3. Characteristics of the three components composing the NPQ and revealed by the nonlinear regression analyses of the NPQ relaxation. From Roháček, 2010 and Roháček et al. 2014.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Fast</th>
<th>Medium</th>
<th>Slow</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Land plants</td>
<td>Diatoms</td>
<td>Land plants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Constant rate</strong></td>
<td>Of the order of s</td>
<td>Of the order of s</td>
<td>Of the order of min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Shape</strong></td>
<td>Exponential</td>
<td>Exponential</td>
<td>Exponential</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mechanism</strong></td>
<td>ΔpH and xanthophyll cycle</td>
<td>Fast conformational changes in the membranes</td>
<td>State transitions (does not exist in diatoms)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
glucose units) in diatoms and starch (polymer of α(1→4) and α(1→6) linked glucose units) in land plants are one of the main sinks for carbon fixed during light periods, and it is also incorporated into glucans through gluconeogenesis (Myklestad & Granum, 2009). Another fraction of the fixed carbon is incorporated via pyruvate into fatty acids or via phosphoenolpyruvate into aromatic compounds (Figure 1.7).

The complexity of studying carbon metabolism appears when the pathways are developed and replaced in their cellular context (Figure 1.8). Carbon metabolism is composed by a myriad of enzymatic reactions distributed between the different compartments of the cell i.e. chloroplast, cytoplasm, mitochondria and peroxisome. The complexity is essentially linked to the pathway duplication. A good example is the set of reactions catalyzing the transformation of glyceraldehyde 3-P (GAP) to phosphoenolpyruvate that is present in the cytosol and chloroplast in land plants and also in the mitochondria in diatoms (Figure 1.8). The complexity is even increased by the fact that each reaction is enhanced by an enzyme that is encoded by several isogenes, which expression is differentially regulated by environmental factors. For these reasons, the study of carbon metabolism is very difficult at the biochemical level and inferences from modifications of the gene expression are usually preferred, with all the reservations that imply such reasoning (see chapter 3).

Figure 1.7. General scheme of fixed carbon transformation into building blocks molecules and final products.
Figure 1.8. General scheme of central carbon metabolism in land plant (A) and diatom (B) (Martin-Jézéquel et al. 2012). Circles show second part of glycolysis pathway from glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate to pyruvate that exist in plastid and cytosol in land plants and also in mitochondria in diatom.
1.2 The reorientation of the carbon metabolism toward the production of secondary compounds

When photosynthetic organisms are growing in a non-stressful environment, the photosynthetically fixed carbon is mostly oriented toward the synthesis of carbohydrates. The metabolic reorientation consists in reducing the production of carbohydrates and concomitantly inject carbon in (an)other pathway(s) to produce the so-called secondary compounds. Chemically, secondary metabolites can be divided into three groups based on their chemical structure: terpenes, phenolic compounds and alkaloids (Wink, 1988).

**Phenolics** are a class of chemical compounds consisting of a hydroxyl group (—OH) bonded directly to an aromatic hydrocarbon group. Based on the number of phenol units in the molecule they are classified as simple phenols, e.g. phenolic acids or polyphenols such as flavonoids. Generally, their primary function is as protection against ultraviolet radiation and pathogens (Manach et al. 2004; Machu et al. 2015).

**Alkaloids** are a diverse group of low molecular weight, nitrogen containing compounds derived mostly from aromatic amino acids (made via shikimate pathway) including phenylalanine, tyrosine and tryptophan. These compounds are purported to associate with stress responses including herbivores and pathogens.

Owing to their potent biological activity, many of the approximately 12,000 known alkaloids have a wide range of pharmacological activities including antimalarial (e.g. quinine), anti-asthma (e.g. ephedrine), anti-cancer (e.g. homoharringtonine), analgesic (e.g. morphine), etc. (Wink, 2003; Sinatra et al. 2010; Kittakoop et al. 2014; Pedone-Bonfim et al. 2015).

**Terpenoids** are the largest class of plant secondary metabolites (Kawoosa et al. 2010; Akula & Ravishankar, 2011) and they derive from the C5 alkene isoprene. They contain multiples of 5, 10, 15, 20 or more carbon atoms (Table 1.4) (Breitmaier, 2006; also see chapter 4). The terpenes are generally insoluble in water and synthesized by acetyl-CoA or glycolysis (Pedone-Bonfim et al. 2015). In plants, geranyl diphosphate (GPP), precursor of monoterpenes, is synthesized in plastids from dimethylallyl diphosphate (DMAPP) and isopentenyl diphosphate (IPP) supplied by the methylerythritol 4-phosphate pathway (MEP) (Rodríguez-Concepción & Boronat, 2002).

The monoterpenes in EO are produced through the activity of various monoterpane synthases (Chen et al. 2011). For example, geraniol synthase (GES) converts GPP into geraniol in basil (Iijima et al. 2004). Recently, Magnard et al. (2015) reported the presence of a cytosolic enzyme (RhNUDX1) taking action in the monoterpenic alcohols pathway in roses. This discovery makes the basis for monoterpenic biosynthesis even more obscure. Very interestingly, monoterpenes similar of those found in mint EO have been detected in the diatom *Thalassiosira* (Meskhidze et al. 2015).
The other branch in terpenoid biosynthesis is diterpene synthesis that requires geranylgeranyl diprophosphate (GGPP) (see chapter 4). The first committed step in carotenoid biosynthesis is head to head condensation of the two C_{20} molecules of GGPP by phytoene synthase (PSY) to form phytoene. GGPP is also the precursor for several other groups of metabolites, including Chls. In diatom brown colour is due to the presence of high amounts of the xanthophylls fucoxanthin that masks the other carotenoids (e.g., β-carotene, violaxanthin, diadinoxanthin and diatoxanthin and the chlorophyllous pigments). The absolute and/or relative amounts of individual pigments may differ according to the taxon and its ecology (Bertrand, 2010).

In unicellular organisms such as microalgae the metabolic reorientation per se concerns the whole organisms. In diatoms, modifications in the environmental factors such as nutrient depletion (Reitan et al. 1994; Breteler et al. 2005) or excess light energy (Norici et al. 2011) may increase cellular lipid content in diatoms. In multicellular organisms such as land plants, the metabolic reorientation is often restricted to a part of the organisms. This part could even be restricted to few cells as it is the case for EO production in mint (Bhat et al. 2002; Lange et al. 2011). EO is fabricated and stored in specialized anatomical structures, termed PGT, on leaf surfaces (Lange et al. 2011; Jin et al. 2014) (Figure 1.9. A.B). The secretory cells of the oil glands responsible for EO biosynthesis can be isolated in high yield from leaves (Fig. 1.9.C) (Gershenson et al. 1992). The isolated secretory cells from glandular trichomes are capable of de novo biosynthesis of monoterpenes from sucrose as primary carbohydrate precursor (Mc Caskill et al. 1992) and they have been shown to be highly enriched in the enzymes of monoterpane biosynthesis (Lange et al. 2000). Thus, in a first approximation, diatoms and secretory cells could be considered as single cells. However, the two models greatly differ when the carbon and energy sources are considered. Actually diatoms are autotrophs i.e; the photosynthetically fixed CO_{2} is

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Terpene type</th>
<th>Number of isoprene units</th>
<th>Number of carbon atoms</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monoterpene</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Volatile compounds such as menthol, camphor, limonene, pinene, thujone, nerol (Meskhidze et al. 2015)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sesquiterpene</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>Farnesol, carophyllene, αbergamotene (Ferriols et al. 2015)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diterpene</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Chlphytol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sesterpene</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>haslenes (Rowland et al. 2001)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Triterpene</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>lanosterol, achilleol, rhizene (Belt et al. 2003)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tetraterpene</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>β-carotene, fucoxanthine</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Figure 1.9. (A) and (B): Scanning electron microscope pictures of the surface of *Mentha piperita* leaf (B: Svoboda et al. 2001). PGT are oil glands responsible in which EO is synthesized and stored. It gives to mint its characteristic aroma. The spikes are small hairs (non-glandular hairy trichome) on the leaf. The pictures have been colored using false colors. (C): Scheme of a transversal section of PGT of *Mentha piperita* (Mc Caskill & Croteau 1999).

used for further biosynthesis, including terpenoids, and the energy for biosynthesis is mostly arising from photosynthesis. In contrast, PGT are heterotrophic cells *i.e.* the energy needed for these syntheses does not come from photosynthesis because PGT of aromatic plants generally have non-green plastids while secreting terpenoids (Lange et al. 2013; Jin et al. 2014). Therefore, these cells rely on exogenous supply of sucrose from underlying leaf tissues, *i.e.* mesophyll, to use as carbon source for monoterpene production (Jin et al. 2014). Sturm & Tang (1999) found higher expression of genes encoding enzymes for sucrose catabolism in secretory cells, such as sucrose synthase, neutral and alkaline invertases that are important to transfer carbon from sucrose in non-photosynthetic tissues. These enzymes convert sucrose to hexose phosphates.

In most plants glucose 6-phosphate (G6P), which is synthesized from sucrose in the cytosol, seems to be the preferred hexose phosphate taken up by non-green plastids. The transporter proteins responsible for this import of carbon into plastids are known as G6P-phosphate translocator (GPT) and secretory cells are enriched in GPT (about 30 times more than green leaf cells) (Jin et al. 2014). Two genes coding for GPT, GPT_1 and GPT_2, have been described in the *Arabidopsis* genome, while GPT_2 is non-essential and generally expressed at lower levels than GPT_1 (Niewiadomski et al. 2005).
Regardless the model under consideration, the available data have revealed that triggering the metabolic reorientation involves a complex signaling network, the description of which is out of the scope of this general introduction. Among these factors light appears to be one of the most important and fundamental environmental factor affecting the orientation of the carbon metabolism (Bowler et al. 2010; Lemoine & Schoefs, 2010; Meitao Dong et al. 2012; Lan et al. 2013). Actually, light can affect the regulation of central carbon metabolism through its two characteristics i.e. wavelength and intensity (Fan et al. 2013; Li et al. 2013). The reorientation of the carbon metabolism toward the production of secondary metabolites is rather well understood when the final pathways are considered (e.g., Lemoine & Schoefs, 2010) but little is known about the pathway used to carbon dispatch between the different pathways, especially under light stress in diatom and land plants (Rech et al. 2008; Vidoudez & Pohnert, 2012). In addition, it has become evident that the production of certain metabolites is highly dependent on the development of the cells and several ecological interactions are mediated by these strongly regulated metabolites (Barofsky et al. 2010; Barofsky et al. 2009, 2010; Vidoudez & Pohnert, 2008).

1.3 Influence of light on growth and reorientation of the carbon metabolism

Land plants and microalgae being photosynthetic organisms, the presence of light is mandatory for their growth and development. As mentioned above photons are harvested by pigments and the energy associated to the photons is used to drive photosynthesis (Chen & Blanke nship, 2011). In nature, including outdoor cultures, sunlight is the continuous source of photons. Per se, indoor culture requires artificial lighting, that are typically outfitted with fluorescent and/or incandescent bulbs providing a general spectrum that is accommodating to the human eyes but not necessarily supportive to plant development (Folta et al. 2005; Li et al. 2013) (see chapters 6 and 7). The incandescent or fluorescent bulbs contain filaments that must be periodically replaced, consume a lot of electrical power and also generate heat, making impossible their use close to the canopy (Tennessen et al. 1994; Singh et al. 2015). Incandescent and fluorescent bulbs differ by their operational lifetime: around of 20,000 h for fluorescent bulbs whereas only 1000 h for incandescent bulbs (Barta et al. 1992; Tennessen et al. 1994). Beside these traditional lighting systems, another lighting source, the Light emitting diodes (LED), rapidly developed (Girón González, 2012). This lighting system has been used less than two decades to test plant responses to narrow wavelength irradiations and has shown to be a promising lighting technology for future because LED usage eliminated limitations of traditional lighting systems environments (Olvera-Gonzalez et al. 2013; Li et al. 2013).

LEDs have an extraordinary lifetime (about 100,000 h), require little maintenance, and they can be placed close to plants and can be configured to emit high light fluxes
even at high light intensities (Barta et al. 1992; Tennessen et al. 1994; Singh et al. 2015). The emergence of energy efficient LEDs has opened up a new methodology for conversion of photonic wavelengths to organic compounds in photosynthetic macro and microorganisms (Tan Nhut et al. 2005; Lan et al. 2013; Fan et al. 2013; Olvera-Gonzalez et al. 2013).

Because the photosynthetic activity is a light dependent process, it is usually thought that increasing the irradiance level is proportionally increasing the photosynthetic activity and thus growth. This is true until a certain level of irradiance (Terry et al. 1983) above which the photosynthetic activity is saturated (Nguyen-Deroche et al. 2012). When the irradiance levels exceed the electron transport capacity, the photosynthetic organisms are stressed and the photosynthetic machinery can be damaged. These damaged can lead to an arrest of photosynthesis (Ritchie, 2010). To avoid such a situation, defense mechanisms such as the xanthophyll cycle, state transition, chloroplast cycling and photoinhibition are activated to dissipate the excess of absorbed energy (Moulin et al. 2010; Allorent et al. 2013; de Marchin et al. 2014; Spetea et al. 2014). It is interesting to note that some of these mechanisms might not exist in some taxons. For instance state transition, which consists in changing the relative antenna size of PSII and PSI does not exist in diatoms. The energy invested in these defense mechanisms being not available for growth, the relation between growth rate and irradiance level reaches a stationary phase or even presents a decreasing phase (Geider et al. 1985). How the carbon metabolism is impacted by the growth light intensity in diatoms remain largely unknown. This is mostly due to the fact that the completion of the genome sequences of diatoms is very recent (Phaeodactylum tricornutum: Bowler et al., 2008; Thalassiosira pseudonana: Armburst et al. 2004) and the reconstitution of the cellular metabolism including prediction of enzyme localization even more fresh and still under discussion (Kroth et al. 2008; Fernie et al. 2012; Kroth, 2015). The transcriptome of P. tricornutum has been studied in a few contexts, such as silicon metabolism (Sapriel et al. 2009), short term light acclimation (Nymark et al. 2009), carbon fixation, storage and utilization (Chauton et al. 2013) and nitrogen stress (Levitan et al. 2015) but growth related modifications in gene expression induced by different light intensities in P. tricornutum are not yet described.

A similar study could not be started in mint because of a general lack of information at the genomic level. When this thesis was initiated, only one paper was reporting mRNA from isolated M. piperita and M. spicata secretory cells that were used to generate a cDNA library (Lange et al. 2000). Recently, next generation sequencing methods have been applied to mint and revealed a more complex metabolism than expected (Jin et al. 2014). Altogether, the knowledge about the development of PGT, terpene production and its regulation is very limited making it difficult a study on carbon reorientation toward the production of EO (Glas et al. 2012; Tissier, 2012).
In addition to being an energy shuttle for photosynthetic organisms, light provides information from the environment to the organisms. For instance, it has been shown that the presence of light has a positive impact on shoot branching (Djennane et al. 2014) and bud burst (Henry et al. 2011) are mechanisms regulated by light. These information are decoded by photoreceptors such as phytochrome (red/farred, blue light, UVB photoreceptors) (Lin, 2000; Rockwell et al. 2006; Heijde & Ulm, 2012). If the knowledge about photoreceptors is really advanced in land plants, it remains in its infancy in microalgae and especially in diatoms (Hegemann, 2008; Fortunato et al. 2015) and will not be treated here. Many studies over the last several decades have clearly shown that variation in light quality can affect growth and control developmental transitions of diatoms and land plants, including mint (diatoms: Mouget et al. 2004; Huysman et al. 2013; land plants; Urbonavičiūtė et al. 2008; Li et al. 2012; Tarakanov et al. 2012; Colquhoun et al. 2013; Bula et al. 1991; Duong et al. 2002, Duong & Nguyen, 2010; Kurilcik et al. 2008; Barisic et al. 2006; mint: Nishioka et al. 2008; Malayeri et al. 2011). Indeed, several results showed that LED light is more suitable for land plant growth than fluorescent lamps (Bula et al. 1991; Folta et al. 2005; Li et al. 2010; Olvera-Gonzalez et al. 2013). To the best of our knowledge, there is no report about the effect of different quality of LED light on plant growth and essential oil production in Mentha taxon, except the study performed in this Ph.D thesis (see chapter 7).

1.4 Reorientation of the carbon metabolism by biotic factors: the case of arbuscular mycorrhizal

As mentioned earlier, land plants and diatoms have emerged from first and secondary endosymbiosis, respectively. When Earth colonization by plants started, plants had only rudimentary xylem for conducting mineral sap (Gerrienne et al. 2011), probably making difficult mineral nutrition (Selosse & Le Tacon, 1998). Plants being rooted they were immobile and unable to move to capture nutrients from their immediate environment. To circumvent this difficulty, plants established a symbiotic associations with Glomalean fungi from the Glomeromycota, ancestors of modern arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi (AMF), about 460 million years ago (Simon et al. 1993; Taylor et al. 1995; Redecker et al. 2000). This is estimated to be some 300–400 million years before the appearance of root nodule symbioses with nitrogen fixing bacteria (Finlay, 2008). In this respect, symbiosis with AMF is the most ancient and widespread form of fungal symbiosis with plants. Indeed today, more than 74% of plant species and more than 90% of the cultivated species still acquire nutrients from soil using AMF, reflecting the evolutionary success of this mutualistic symbiosis (Wang & Qiu, 2006; Smith & Read, 2008; Heijden et al. 2015). These interactions between organisms pervade all ecosystems and strongly influence the structure of natural populations and
communities (Cairney, 2000). It is interesting to note that only 150–200 species of AMF have so far been distinguished on the basis of morphology, but DNA-based studies suggest the true diversity of these symbionts may be very much higher (Fitter, 2005; Soka & Ritchie, 2015).

From the functional point of view, the symbiosis is primarily seen as a trade contract between the two partners: the fungus provides the plants with water and mineral, especially phosphate. AMF being heterotrophs, they require an external source of carbon for energy and cellular synthesis that the plant is ‘offering’. Thus, photosynthetic products under the form of glucose and fructose to the fungus, are converted to trehalose and lipids (Pfeffer et al. 1999; Doidy et al. 2012). Lipids translocate to the extraradical mycelium for further metabolism, as they are the major forms of carbon storage in AM fungal spores, hyphae, and vesicles (Cox et al. 1975). The trading of compounds occurs through the unique highly branched fungal structures, the so-called arbuscule, which grow intracellularly without penetrating the host plasmalemma (Finlay, 2008) (Figure 1.10).

Depending on the AMF species, it is assumed that the total carbohydrate cost of the arbuscular mycorrhiza (AM) symbiosis can be up to 20% of the host plant photosynthetic production (Harrison, 1999; Kaschuk et al. 2009; Lendenmann et al. 2011; van der Heijden et al. 2015). Clearly, AMF constitutes additional carbon sinks that sources, the above ground part of plants, should feed.

![Figure 1.10](image)

**Figure 1.10.** A) light microscopic image of *Mentha spicata* root with arbuscules inside root cells. The black circle represent an arbusculecontainig root cell that is explained by detailes in partB (picture B from Recorbet et al. 2008)

Consequently, the photosynthetic activity of mycorrhized plants is expected to be enhanced. Actually, many reports describe stimulatory effects of photosynthesis in
mycorrhizal plants (Louche-Tessandier et al. 1999; Valentine et al. 2001). Boldt et al. (2011) reported a decrease, and Parádi et al. (2003) and Adolfsson et al. (2015) found no effect of mycorrhization on Chl content and fluorescence. In contrast, Adolfsson et al. (2015) demonstrated that photosynthesis in *Medicago truncatula* was enhanced through branching enhancement. The reason for this discrepancy remains unclear as well as the mechanism by which AM could influence these photosynthetic parameters in plant leaves. Arbuscular mycorrhization also induces carbon reorientation. For instance, in the root, mycorrhization induces the synthesis of secondary carotenoids that eventually are used for the production of C13/C14 apocarotenoids regulating the timelife of the arbuscules (Walter et al. 2015).

The activation of the carotenoid metabolism has likely additional function relevant for symbiosis due to plastid role in the biosynthesis of gibberellin, abscisic acid and strigolactone (Seddas et al. 2010; Walter et al. 2015; Takeda et al. 2015). In addition, the increased amounts of glutamate and aspartate in roots of AM plants (Lohse et al. 2005; Schliemann et al. 2008; Rivero et al. 2015) suggest a stimulation of amino acid biosynthesis and N assimilation in plastids upon mycorrhization. A mycorrhiza related activation of plastidic metabolism was also inferred from the increased abundance of some fatty acids (palmitic and oleic acids) in *M. truncatula* roots (Lohse et al. 2005; Schliemann et al. 2008), presumably reflecting the extension and *de novo* synthesis of the plasma membrane around the arbuscule, the so-called periarbuscular membrane (Figure 1.10) (Gaude et al. 2012a; b). Gutjahr et al. (2011) also showed that although starch is dispensable for mycorrhization, it can, when present, be used as a second energy source for AM symbiosis. Likewise, the comparison of the membrane proteome between mycorhizal and non-mycorrhizal roots of *M. truncatula* indicated a reduced abundance of plastidic proteins having role in carbon import to plastids, ammonium assimilation and glycolysis, thereby suggesting that part of carbon skeletons devoted to plastid metabolism might be highjacked to sustain the fungal development within host roots (Abdallah et al. 2014).

For the reasons explained earlier, much less is known about carbon reorientation in the photosynthetic cells of AM plants. This reorientation should occur at least in aromatic plants because a higher production of secondary metabolic is often recorded in AM plants (del Rosario Cappellari et al. 2015; Copetta et al. 2006; Khaosaad et al. 2006; Zeng et al. 2013; Kumar et al. 2014 a; b; Ratti et al. 2015). Last but not least, it is worth to mention that mycorrhization enhance plant fitness by increasing resistance or tolerance to biotic and abiotic stresses (Newsham et al. 1995; Auge, 2001; Alouï et al. 2011). How light intensity and light quality influence the carbon reorientation mechanisms in the photosynthetic tissue remains unknown, as to the best of our knowledge, there is no report showing the interaction between mycorrhizal symbiosis and different LED light quality on plant productivity.
1.5 Objectives

The main objective of this study was to evaluate the impact of modifications of the lighting environment on the carbon metabolism in diatom and land plant with the aim to decipher the modification of the carbon circuits triggered by these modifications. Working on this main frame light intensity and light quality alone or together with the presence of an additional biotic stress was tested. To perform this study, we have chosen two models: the diatom “P. tricornutum” and land plant “Mentha sp.”

*P. tricornutum* was chosen because of
(i) its genome has been sequenced, facilitating genomic and transcriptomic studies (Bowler et al. 2008; Kroth et al. 2008; Saade & Bowler, 2009; Cadoret et al. 2012; Ji et al. 2013) as well as reverse genetics (e.g., Cadoret et al. 2012; Ge et al. 2014);
(ii) its culture is rather easy and the cell are growing fast;
(iii) there is an abundant references about this alga;
(iv) under certain circumstances, such as light stress, the amount of triacyl glycerides (TAG) is increased making this alga an alternative source for the production and extraction of lipids;
(v) it doesn’t need to form the characteristic frustules, suggesting that it can be grown in medium with less silicon (Francius et al. 2008; Shrestha et al. 2012; Zhao et al. 2014). This provides an experimental advantage when compounds such as pigment have to be extracted.

These special characteristics make *P. tricornutum* an ideal model to study the reorientation of the carbon metabolism toward the production of secondary metabolites.

*Mentha* sp. was chosen because of
(i) very significant role in economy, not only for its application as food ingredient but also for its highly diversified industrial use in confectionary, cosmetics and pharmaceutical sectors.
(ii) its appropriate size for studying the growth inside incubator.

After a general introduction (Chapter 1), the thesis is organized in two parts. The first one (Chapters 2 and 3) is dedicated to the investigation in the diatom *P. tricornutum* cells under different irradiances (30-1000 µmol m\(^{-2}\) s\(^{-1}\)). As diatoms may respond to environmental stresses by accumulating high value components such as lipids, we determined how carbon participation changes from primary to secondary metabolite synthesis by changing the level of the light intensity. For this aim we studied the variations of the transcription activity of genes coding for key enzymes of the central carbon metabolism and also some genes related to secondary metabolite biosynthesis. This information may be of help to understand better the regulation of secondary metabolites not only in diatom, but also in *Mentha* species.
The second part (Chapters 4-8) is focused on the effects of light on the growth of several mint species and their EO production. First we report the natural occurrence of mycorrhized mint accessions\(^1\) in different geographical regions of Iran distinct by their climate (Chapter 5). These accessions have been used to study the impact of different light qualities on growth and EO production (Chapter 7). The capacity to additionally enhance the growth and EO production by introducing an additional stress factors, a mycorrhizal fungus, in the plant environment has been then tested (Chapter 8).

The manuscript ends with a general conclusions and perspective in chapter 9. For the presentation of the results, we have decided to take advantage of the fact that part of our results have been published or submitted for publication (Chapters 3 and 8). Because we had the opportunity to participate to the writing of several review paper, we have used them to introduce more specifically research papers.

1.6 References


---

\(^1\) The term accession refers to the collected plant material from their particular location. These plants are not commercially cultivated.


Shukla S.K. & Mohan R. (2012). The contribution of diatoms to worldwide crude oil deposits. In the science of algal fuels: phycology, geology, biophotonics, genomics and nanotechnology,


Part I

Regulation of secondary metabolites production in *Phaeodactylum tricornutum* under different light intensities
These last years, the interest for microalgae, including diatoms has been increased as these organisms start to accumulate high value compounds such as pigments, fatty acids, xanthophylls, astaxanthin, \(\beta\)-carotene, fucoxanthin and biofuels, when facing abiotic stresses. Despite the efforts made in microalgae engineering, the culture systems are still not as efficient as they should do to satisfy the demand. We believe that it is mainly due to the wide gaps between the knowledge of microalgae like diatom biochemistry and physiology, especially when responses to stress conditions are concerned (Chapter 2). Therefore, deciphering the complex interactions of diatoms and their metabolic responses in their natural environment first requires a better understanding of the metabolic responses in simple and controlled environment. One possibility to reach this goal consists to more efficiently and effectively leverage large-scale genomewide databases to address contemporary issues such as improving algal lipid yields for algal applications. \(P.\ tricornutum\) is a very good candidate producing numerous bioactive molecules of interest for health such as lipid rich in omega-3 fatty acids including EPA and carotenoids (e.g. fucoxanthin). As the complete genome sequence of the diatom has become available, it has been intensively studied at the genomic and transcriptomic levels and studies on cell physiology and metabolism during stress have been developed recently. Physiological reactions of the cells to different light intensities during the growth have been studied in the past, but the molecular mechanisms, especially those involving in carbon metabolism, has not been reported yet. This theme constitutes the core of this part of the manuscript. It starts with an introductory chapter (chapter 2) explaining why the understanding of cell functioning requires complementary approaches and diatoms are used as examples. Following this guidelines, we used bioinformatic tools to develop a model of central carbon metabolism in the diatom \(P.\ tricornutum\). Cells were then grown under different light intensities and their responses observed at the molecular, biochemical and physiological levels. The metabolic pathway model was used to analyze transcriptome data to address questions with regard to the regulation of secondary metabolites (Chapter 3).

2.1 Abstract

The particular gene complement in diatoms, inherited from various types of organisms, has contributed to the development of metabolic networks that contrast with those found in other photosynthetic organisms. To understand these networks and how they are linked, transcriptomic, proteomic and metabolomic approaches have been used over the last decade. Understanding how these networks developed and interact remains a major goal for physiologists. Metabolic compartmentalization and fluxes between compartments are still poorly known, requiring: (1) the localization of proteins and biological activities, as well as potential protein isoforms and (2) relating metabolite measurements to pathway fluxes. Moreover, when considering metabolism, the identification of transcription factors, which are largely unknown for diatoms, is necessary. Integration of the results from these different approaches will complete our understanding of cell functioning and how differences impact metabolic reorientation.

Keywords: diatom, microalgae, transcriptomic, proteomic, metabolomic, metabolism, network, regulation
2.2 Introduction

Since the appearance of the first agricultural practices, humans have tried to improve plants to produce food, animal feed and highvalue compounds. These practices, which have supported the development of human communities all over the world, would not have been possible without a petroleum-based economy producing fuels, materials, such as plastic and chemicals, such as fertilizers. This economy has at least three major consequences: (1) a shortage of natural resources, (2) a competition for land to produce energy and food, and (3) a rise in the atmospheric CO₂ concentration (Feely et al. 2008). For example, Dukes (2003) reported that the total fossil fuels consumed per year release $44 \times 10^{18}$ g of carbon into the atmosphere, i.e. 400-fold the amount fixed by photosynthesis. This large difference between carbon release in the atmosphere and carbon fixation results in a carbon accumulation in the atmosphere, which has a strong ecological impact known as global warming. Consequently, the petroleum-based economy does not appear to be sustainable for much longer.

The increase in atmospheric CO₂ also has an impact on the oceans because atmospheric CO₂ dissolves in water to form $\text{HCO}_3^- + \text{H}^+$, which ultimately decreases the pH and carbonate ion concentration in seawater (Orr et al. 2005; Wu et al. 2010). Acidification of the ocean may have pleiotropic effects on living organisms because it can perturb respiration and photosynthetic activities (Crawley et al. 2010; Wu et al. 2010), disturb the calcification processes of diverse organisms (for a review, see Doney et al. 2012) and modify the vertical stratification of water, a phenomenon that modifies sound absorption (Hester et al. 2008) and isolates plankton from nutrient sources. The production of biomass from phototrophic macro and/or microorganisms is one type of CO₂ mitigation technology (Benemann, 1997) aimed at reducing these negative effects. Among the algae, diatoms constitute the most abundant group of marine eukaryotic organisms, contributing ~20–40% of the organic matter produced in the ocean, which is more than all terrestrial rainforests combined (Field et al. 1998; Granum et al. 2005; Bowler et al. 2010). In addition, diatoms are very promising biotechnological tools because they are capable of producing many highvalue compounds such as polysaccharides, lipids, polyunsaturated fatty acids, pigments and biofuels (Cadoret et al. 2012; Mimouni et al. 2012; Heydarizadeh et al. 2013). Last, but not least, diatoms are promising subjects for the preparation of nanotechnological tools (Kroger & Poulsen, 2008).

Despite the important progress made in microalgal bioreactor technology (Cogne et al. 2011; Vasseur et al. 2012), the use of algae as cell factories remains in its infancy. We believe that the major reason for this is that the gaps in the knowledge of diatom biochemistry and physiology are still tremendous, especially where responses to stress conditions are concerned. A deep knowledge of algal stress physiology is of particular importance for biotechnology because the production of highvalue compounds often
results from metabolic shifts that are induced by stressful conditions. For example, blue light triggers accumulation of the blue pigment mareninone, typical of Haslea ostrearia (Bory) Simonsen (Mouget et al. 2005). Elucidation of the regulatory mechanisms involved in the incorporation of carbon atoms fixed by photosynthesis into biomass and/or highvalue compounds is crucial. The cellular metabolism of an autotrophic cell can be illustrated using a marshalling yard, in which each railroad represents a biosynthetic pathway ending with the production of particular compounds.

The entry of carbon is achieved through the fixation of CO₂ via ribulose1,5-bisphosphate carboxylase/oxygenase (RubisCo) or phosphoenolpyruvate carboxylase (PEPCK; Raven, 1993). Under nonstressful conditions, the carbon is mostly used to produce carbohydrates through primary metabolism. Stress conditions trigger modifications of the metabolic switches, changing the flow of the carbon toward new compounds (e.g. Lemoine & Schoefs, 2010).

Which biochemical pathways are used to drive the carbon atoms for the synthesis of stressinduced compounds? What are the regulatory elements involved in the control of the switches? En route toward answering these questions, the first goal has been to establish a list of the potential proteins involved in cell functioning. The first part of this article (Genome sequencing: towards the system’s part list) briefly explains what wholegenome sequencing has provided. With genomics data in hand, the second goal is to draw metabolic schemes, taking into account the compartmentalization of enzymatic activities.

Genome sequencing allows the development of further global (omics) approaches, which, when combined, permit an understanding of the interplay between the major players, e.g. genes (genomics), RNA (transcriptomics), proteins (proteomics) and metabolites in a cell. The need to combine different global approaches is explained (Combining several ‘omics’ to generate cell models) and finally the control of metabolic networks by transcription factors is considered.

2.3 Genome sequencing: towards the system’s part list

One of the major goals of modern biology is to elucidate the mechanisms that allow organisms to modulate their functioning according to changing environmental conditions.

To reach this goal, it became obvious that the identity of the players involved in the systems, i.e. the system’s ‘parts list’ should be established. Until data from genome sequencing became available, the system’s part list was progressively built up using biochemical studies, such as enzyme isolation or radioactive tracers. For example, using radiolabelled carbon (NaH₁⁴CO₃), Rech et al. (2008) studied carbon allocation between C₃ and C₄like carbon acquisition metabolism in the diatom H. ostrearia, grown under different light conditions. Under blue light, more carbon was allocated to the C₄-like
pathway than the C₃ pathway, whereas the opposite occurred under green light. In addition to the typical metabolites of the C₃ and C₄ pathways, some unusual compounds, such as sucrose and glycerol were labelled, suggesting that adaptation to green light conditions requires a specific enzyme set. However, how frequently such particularities appear remains difficult to estimate.

The ‘one gene–one protein’ hypothesis (Beadle & Tatum, 1941) introduced the idea that determining all the coding sequences in a genome would at least furnish the system’s parts list. For technical reasons, it took ~30 years before the first genome was sequenced (Fiers et al. 1976) and another 20 years before genomics sequencing techniques were available to the scientific community. The first diatom genome sequenced was that of *Thalassiosira pseudonana* (Hustedt) Hasle & Heimdal (Armbrust et al. 2004).

Since then, several other sequenced genomes have either been published or completed, or are close to completion (Table 2.1). Genome analyses have revealed that significant horizontal gene transfer from bacteria has occurred (Bowler et al. 2008; Keeling & Palmer, 2008), with at least 587 genes (~5% of the total genome) of putative bacterial origin in the *Phaeodactylum tricornutum* Bohlin genome (Bowler et al. 2008). This is a much higher proportion than in other eukaryotes, and includes bacterial genes derived from different lineages (proteobacteria, cyanobacteria and archaea; Bowler et al. 2008). A large number of these genes are involved in organic carbon and nitrogen utilization processes. Examples include the cytosolic NAD(P)H-dependent nitrite reductase that is homologous to nirB of bacteria and fungi, and a mitochondrial glutamine synthase III. None of these enzymes could be found in green algae or land plants (Robertson & Alberte, 1996; Armbrust et al. 2004; Allen et al. 2006; Siaut et al. 2007). Diatoms also have many animal genomelike features. For instance, 806 deduced protein sequences (~7% of the total proteome) of *T. pseudonana* present homologies with mouse, but not land plant or red algal genes (Armbrust et al. 2004). Recent genomic analyses also suggested that many diatom genes actually have a green algal origin (reviewed in Archibald, 2012; Deschamps & Moreira, 2012; Mock & Medlin, 2012).

Thus, genomic data have revealed the mosaic character of diatom genomes. Genes originating from widely diverse sources have contributed to produce organisms with unique properties, such as the presence of four envelopes around the chloroplast and the absence of grana stacks (reviewed in Solymosi, 2012), a periplastid endoplasmic reticulum (Palmer & Delwiche, 1998), unique pigment composition (reviewed in Bertrand, 2010; Heydarizadeh et al. 2013) and biochemical pathways such as a full urea cycle (Armbrust et al. 2004; Bowler et al. 2008; Allen et al. 2011). Genomic data have also revealed new pathways or the particular cell localization of pathways (Kroth et al. 2008; Allen et al. 2011; Fernie et al. 2012) (see below) and have contributed to a more comprehensive understanding of the metabolic networks in diatoms. They have also
revealed the existence of putative proteins with unknown functions (Armbrust et al. 2004; Bowler et al. 2008; Hanson et al. 2010), for which functional studies should be performed to determine their physiological role.

2.4 From the genome to the biochemical model, or who is connected with whom?

The basis of cell functioning is the metabolic network, composed of interconnected individual reactions along which substrates are converted to products. Most individual reactions are catalysed by enzyme(s) although a few are spontaneous (e.g. Daher et al. 2010). Our current understanding of diatom metabolic networks lags significantly behind that for green algae or higher plants and, accordingly, knowledge from the latter models was often transferred to diatoms.

For instance, when the first experimental evidence of a C₄ mechanism for CO₂ fixation in diatoms became available, this was interpreted in the context of higher plant and green algal metabolism (Beardall et al. 1976). Reconstruction of diatom metabolic networks based on genome sequencing has revealed numerous unique features of their metabolism that differentiate them from Plantae (for a review, see Fernie et al. 2012).

The deduced amino acid sequence of proteins contains information about the cellular localization and function of proteins. The presence of conserved protein domains (e.g. ATPase, DNA binding) and the similarity to sequences of proteins/genes for which function has been established can inform functional annotation. However, similar sequences may encode proteins that catalyse different reactions (Hanson et al. 2010). Therefore, functional annotation based only on sequence analysis should be interpreted with caution; only demonstration of biochemical activity can confirm annotation. For instance, similarity based annotation revealed the presence of six putative carbonic anhydrase (CA) genes in the *P. tricornutum* genome, although the active site in four of these lacked a conserved histidine residue (Tachibana et al. 2011). Two βCAs have already been identified as active in the chloroplast (Satoh et al. 2001; Tanaka et al. 2005). Whether these four putative CA genes also encode active CAs remains an open question that should be addressed at the functional level (Tachibana et al. 2011).

Draft metabolic networks reconstructed from genomic information are provided by KEGG (http://www.genome.jp/kegg/pathway.html) or Diatomcyc (http://Diatomcyc.org/) (Fabris et al. 2012). It is important to recognize that these schemes are only a starting point for understanding diatom metabolism. Often they do not provide information about the compartment in which the pathways function (see below) or about the direction of metabolite flux under different ecophysiological conditions. This information is difficult to predict because biochemical reactions are formally reversible, but forward and reverse reactions are often catalysed by different enzymes. The duplication of pathways in different compartments may result in opposite metabolic
flows. For instance, the plastidial Calvin–Benson cycle and the cytoplasmic oxidative pentose phosphate pathway mediate net carbon flux in opposite directions. Consequently, the activities of the associated enzymes are tightly regulated, for instance, through co and/or post-translational modifications (Baiet et al. 2011; Mathieu-Rivet et al. 2013). Thus, understanding metabolic adjustments in response to environmental stimuli involves several aspects that are not covered by information extracted from genome sequences.

2.5 Physiology requires an integrated model taking into account the cellular compartmentalization of the biochemical activities

Eukaryotic metabolism is strongly compartmentalized, i.e. different pathways or reactions occur only in particular organelles. Compartmentalization is a result of endosymbiosis and/or the presence of a membrane for enzymatic activity (Palmer & Delwiche, 1998; Schoefs, 2008; Curtis et al. 2012; Gould, 2012; Spetea et al. 2012). For instance, the biosynthetic pathway leading to photosynthetic pigment production is only located in chloroplasts (for reviews, see Bertrand, 2010; Heydarizadeh et al. 2013). The concept of microcompartments emerged from the observation that the biochemical activities in an organelle are not homogeneously distributed within it, but are located in specialized areas (for a review, see Sweetlove & Fernie, 2013).

For instance, plant membranes contain microdomains and rafts that can influence the spatiotemporal organization of protein complexes, thereby conferring specialization on these microdomains (for a review, see Malinsky et al. 2013). To our knowledge, the only report on the presence of rafts in microalgae was obtained from the green alga 

\textit{Chlorella kessleri}, whose hexose–proton symporter HUP1 showed a spotty distribution on the plasma membrane of the yeast \textit{Saccharomyces cerevisiae} (Grossmann et al. 2006).

Gierasch & Gershenson (2009) consider that few (if any) enzymes occur free in solution. There are many reasons (pH optimum, inhibition by metabolic intermediates, etc.) why particular pathways occur in separate compartments.

For instance, the xanthophyll de-epoxidation step of the xanthophyll cycle requires considerable acidification of the thylakoid lumen (pH~4.5) that would be incompatible with the activity of enzymes in the stroma (pH~6.8) for a review, see Bertrand, 2010). Thus, full understanding of cell functioning requires the composition and structure of both organelles and microcompartments to be determined.

In turn, this requires the isolation of cell compartments combined with assays to detect the presence and activity of selected enzymes. Isolation of highly enriched fractions of intact diatom organelles remains difficult (for a review, see Kroth, 2007). To our knowledge, only plasma membrane (Sullivan et al. 1974), thylakoid membranes
Table 2.1. List of the diatom genomes or transcriptomes sequenced or close to completion.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of diatom</th>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Ecology</th>
<th>Sequenced</th>
<th>Genome size (Mb)</th>
<th>Number of predicted genes</th>
<th>Core genes</th>
<th>Unique genes</th>
<th>Ref</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Centric</td>
<td>Thalassiosira pseudonana</td>
<td>Marine, pelagic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>32.4</td>
<td>11 776</td>
<td>4332</td>
<td>1407</td>
<td>3912</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Thalassiosira oceanica (Hasle)</td>
<td>Marine, planktonic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pennate</td>
<td>Phaeodactylum tricornutum</td>
<td>Marine, benthic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>27.4</td>
<td>10 402</td>
<td>3523</td>
<td>1328</td>
<td>4366</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pennate</td>
<td>Fragilariopsis cylindrus (Grunow)</td>
<td>Marine, psychrophilic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>80.5</td>
<td>27 137</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pennate</td>
<td>Pseudonitzschia multiseries (Hasle)</td>
<td>Marine, producing domoic acid</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>219 (draft)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Seminavis robusta</td>
<td>Marine, benthic</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Danicichidis &amp; D. G. Mann</td>
<td>Marine, benthic</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fistulifera sp.</td>
<td>Oleaginous</td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Thalassiosira rotula 1647 (Meunier)</td>
<td>Marine, planktonic</td>
<td>Transcriptome</td>
<td>49.9 (draft)</td>
<td>20 455 ORF</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Haslea ostrearia</td>
<td>Marine, benthic, producing the blue pigment marennine</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cyclotella meneghiniana (Kützing)</td>
<td>Freshwater, planktonic</td>
<td>Abandoned</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GOLD
Table 2.2. Examples of antibodies used for subcellular protein localization in diatoms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Protein targeted</th>
<th>Taxon used</th>
<th>Usage</th>
<th>Antibody origin</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mn-superoxide dismutase</td>
<td><em>Thalassiosira pseudonana</em></td>
<td>Subcellular localization</td>
<td>Native</td>
<td>Wolfe-Simon et al. (2006)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fucoxanthin Chl a/c</td>
<td><em>Cyclotella cryptica</em></td>
<td>Subcellular localization</td>
<td>Synthetic</td>
<td>Becker &amp; Rhiel (2006)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>binding polypeptides</td>
<td>(Reimann, Lewin &amp; Guillard)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fcp2, Fcp4 and Fcp6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitrate reductase</td>
<td><em>Skeletonema costatum</em></td>
<td>Flow cytometry</td>
<td>Synthetic</td>
<td>Jochem et al. (2000)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Grev.) A. Cleve 1878</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tubulin</td>
<td><em>Stephanopyxis turris</em></td>
<td>Subcellular localization</td>
<td>Sea urchin tubulin</td>
<td>Wordeman et al. (1986)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*(Chaetoceros gracilis: Nagao et al. 2007; P. tricornutum and T. pseudonana: Grouneva et al. 2011)* and mitochondria (Bartulos et al. 2013) have been purified to any extent.

The protein content of enriched cell fractions can be determined using proteomic tools. Such an approach, combined with 2D bluenative SDS–PAGE electrophoresis and optimized for the separation of thylakoid protein complexes (Sirpio et al. 2011) was used to obtain the protein map of photosynthetic membranes of *P. tricornutum* and *T. pseudonana*. This revealed the presence of diatomspecific proteins, PGR5 (proton gradient regulator)/GPRL (PGR-like), associated with photosystem I (Grouneva et al. 2011). Because of the inevitable contaminations of purified fractions, and also to the fact that proteins could have dual localization, protein localization based on proteomics should be complemented by other methods (Beebo et al. 2013; Pfeil et al. 2013). Of these, immunocytochemistry is the method of choice but this requires that the protein of interest can be targeted by an antibody. Wolfe-Simon et al. (2006) used this to demonstrate that Mn-superoxide dismutase (MnSOD) is localized in the chloroplast in *T. pseudonana*, whereas it is found exclusively in the mitochondria in other photoautotrophs (del Rio et al. 2003).

Unfortunately, antibodies prepared against diatom proteins are not always available. To overcome this difficulty, antibodies against synthetic C or N termini (Becker & Rhiel, 2006) or against homologous proteins of other organisms can be used (Table 2.2). For instance, Wordeman et al. (1986) used an antibody against sea urchin tubulin to follow the distribution of cytoplasmic microtubules during the cell cycle of *Stephanopyxis turris* (Greville) Ralfs.

More recently, the development of genetic transformation combined with the availability of more protein reporters (Remington, 2011) has allowed the localization of proteins in living cells (Poulsen & Kröger, 2005; Tachibana et al. 2011; Curnow et al. 2012; Muto et al. 2012). Methods for localizing metabolites are also available, but are more complex than for proteins (Stitt et al. 1980; Chaudhuri et al. 2011) and have not yet been applied to diatoms. In many cases, a single biochemical pathway requires
cooperation between several compartments, for example, the $C_2$ oxidative photosynthetic cycle. RubisCo, the primary enzyme for carbon fixation, has a single active site with a high affinity for both CO$_2$ and O$_2$ (for a review, see Sage et al. 2012). The $C_2$ oxidative photosynthetic cycle occurs when O$_2$ out-competes CO$_2$ at the RubisCo active site. O$_2$ utilization leads to the formation of a twocarbon molecule, 2-phosphoglycolate that cannot enter the Benson–Calvin cycle. Instead, it enters the $C_2$ oxidative photosynthetic cycle. In higher plants and green algae, this cycle involves organic carbon and nitrogen compounds, including glycolate, glycine and serine, ending with the formation of 3-phosphoglycerate, which can enter the Benson–Calvin cycle. The $C_2$ oxidative photosynthetic cycle requires the cooperation of three cell compartments, namely chloroplast, peroxisome and mitochondria (Figure 2.1). This pathway is also called photorespiration because it consumes O$_2$, and one of every four C atoms entering the $C_2$ oxidative photosynthetic cycle pathway is used to produce CO$_2$.

By contrast, the conversion of glycine to serine results in the formation of NH$_3$ (Keys et al. 1978), which can enter the urea cycle (for a review, see Fernie et al. 2012). Homologues to genes coding the $C_2$ oxidative photosynthetic cycle enzymes in other eukaryotes have been found for P. tricornutum and T. pseudonana, except for glycerate kinase, which catalyses the conversion of glycerate to 3-phosphoglycerate (Kroth et al. 2008). This absence leaves the $C_2$ oxidative photosynthetic cycle pathway open in diatoms (Figure 2.1). Additional studies on the role of the $C_2$ oxidative cycle are needed, especially in relation to the $C_4$ CO$_2$-fixation mode (see above) because this can be enhanced under certain light wavelengths (Rech et al. 2008). It is also clear that intimate cooperation between different cell compartments is required for this process to occur because the enzymes involved have unique cellular localizations. Although some organelles have their own genomes, many proteins are translated on cytoplasmic ribosomes and targeted to another compartment. In diatoms, as in other eukaryotes, the main molecular tools for targeting proteins to specific compartments are $N$-glycosylation and transit peptides. $N$-glycosylation is usually used to orientate proteins to the Golgi apparatus, cell wall and extracellular medium. Despite its importance for basic and applied science, little is known about post-translational modification for intracellular protein trafficking in microalgae.

Using an in silico approach and functional heterologous complementation experiments, Baiet et al. (2011) reconstituted the $N$-glycosylation pathway in P. tricornutum and demonstrated the involvement of an $N$-acetylglucosamine transferase I. Transit peptides are mostly used to target proteins to the chloroplast, mitochondria, endoplasmic reticulum and peroxisomes (Liaud et al. 2000; Bruce, 2001; Kroger & Poulsen, 2008; Gonzalez et al. 2011). The need to target peptides originates from gene transfer from the endosymbiont genome to the host nucleus during evolution, while maintaining the unique biochemical properties of the resulting organelle, e.g. respiration in mitochondria, photosynthesis in chloroplasts. This gene migration has
resulted in the highly reduced organelle genomes observed today, and in the necessity to import hundreds of proteins into the organelles to ensure their biochemical activity (Timmis et al. 2004).

To predict the subcellular localization of proteins based on the presence of targeting sequences, several in silico methods have been developed (Table 2.3). These are mostly based on analysis of the presence of single or multiple targeting signals that are required to cross the membrane in situ (Lang et al. 1998; Schwartzbach et al. 1998). Although none of these prediction algorithms is specific to diatoms, most postgenomic studies on diatoms use them to predict protein localization. For instance, glycine decarboxylase (Figure 2.1), an enzyme of the photorespiration pathway, has been hypothesized to be targeted to mitochondria, based on the fact that its sequence contains an N-terminus enriched in positively charged and nonpolar residues (Schnitzler-Parker et al. 2005), characteristic of mitochondrial presequences in higher plants (Chaumont & Boutry, 1995) and diatoms (Liaud et al. 2000). It is also clear that targeting signals show different degrees of evolutionary conservation, and thus, sequence-based detection of targeting sequences using models developed for other organisms has limited accuracy when applied to diatoms. In silico analyses of the targeting signal of translated sequences led to the discovery of an atypical cellular localization of proteins in diatoms compared to green algae or higher plants. For instance, in green algae, both the Calvin–Benson cycle and the oxidative pentose pathway are localized in the chloroplast.

In diatoms, the former pathway is localized in the chloroplast, but the latter is located in the cytoplasm (Kroth et al. 2008). In some diatoms, such as P. tricornutum, an incomplete oxidative pentose phosphate is also found in the chloroplast (Michels et al. 2005; Kroth et al. 2008).

These different localizations would induce different physiological strategies. There is an urgent need to confirm these protein localizations and their related biological activities using reporter genes, fluorescence-tagged proteins, in situ hybridization or immunolocalization. This has been done in P. tricornutum, using 5D timelapse confocal imaging of the protein EB1, a marker for microtubule dynamics, and along the microtubules in YFP (Yellow Fluorescent Protein) expressing transgenic cells (De Martino et al. 2009).

An additional difficulty is that parts of the biochemical networks in diatoms are redundant with respect to metabolite usage and also in enzyme isoforms. This is especially true for the central metabolism. For example, several copies of the genes encoding the Calvin–Benson cycle enzymes fructose 1,6-bisphosphatase aldolase (FBA) and fructose 1,6-bisphosphatase (FBP) are present in the P. tricornutum genome. Three of the predicted FBA proteins are targeted to the plastids and two to the cytosol. Four FBPases have been identified in the plastid while only one has been described in the cytosol (Kroth et al. 2008). This isoenzyme redundancy may in part reflect the evolution
of diatoms by secondary endocytobiosis (Patron et al. 2004). Duplication may contribute to the protection of essential processes by functional compensation in the event of genetic mutation (Zhang, 2012). To our knowledge, this has not been shown in diatoms, but is well established in higher plants (e.g. Beebo et al. 2009). However, different isoforms might respond to different (stress) situations, but we currently know very little about the function, localization and differentiation of diatom isoenzymes.

2.6 Combining several ‘omics’ to generate cell models

During their evolutionary history, diatoms inherited genes from various sources (see ‘Introduction’) resulting in a unique combination of networks, supporting a variety of defence mechanisms. This makes diatoms very different from other photosynthetic organisms, such as green algae and land plants (Fernie et al. 2012, see also above), and very successful in a dynamic environment. To uncover the different networks, and to understand how they are linked together, omics approaches have been developed.

With respect to transcriptomics, differential gene expression (Maheswari et al. 2005; 2009; Montsant et al. 2005), digital gene expression databases (Maheswari et al. 2010), microarrays (Allen et al. 2008; Mock et al. 2008) and transcriptome sequencing have been used (Valenzuela et al. 2012). Two different approaches, i.e. ‘a priori’ and ‘global’ may be employed, and both are still widely, and successfully, used to reveal key aspects of the physiological state of cells, particularly carbon partitioning (Parker & Armbrust, 2005; Allen et al. 2008; Nymark et al. 2009; Valenzuela et al. 2012).

The ‘a priori’ strategy targets genes for which the sequence is known (from genome web databases). Variations in the transcripts can be investigated in a few genes by northern blot or quantitative PCR (qPCR) or simultaneously on large numbers of genes using microarrays. For example, Parker & Armbrust (2005) studied the effects of nitrogen sources, temperature and light on transcript abundances of five key genes from three carbon and nitrogen metabolism pathways in *T. pseudonana*. Each gene was chosen based on its specificity to a pathway: nitrate reductase (NR) and glutamine synthetase II (GSII) are both required for nitrate consumption, phosphoglycolate phosphatase (PGP) and glycine decarboxylase Tprotein (GDCT, see Figure 2.1) for photorespiration, and sedoheptulose 1,7-biphosphatase (SBP) for carbon fixation through the Calvin cycle.

The data were used to build a hypothetical model explaining the patterns of transcript accumulation and demonstrating the complex interaction between carbon and nitrogen metabolism (Parker & Armbrust, 2005). When sequence information is available, this approach provides a straight-forward and relatively rapid method for assessing potential metabolic changes. Allen et al. (2008) employed a microarray combined with a range of physiological measurements and gas chromatography-mass spectroscopy (GC-MS)-aided non-targeted metabolomic analysis to explore the different
**Figure 2.1. The main reaction of the photorespiratory pathway in diatoms.** Operation of the C₂ oxidative photosynthetic cycle involves the cooperation of three cell compartments, i.e. the chloroplast (in green), the peroxisome (in blue) and the mitochondria (in yellow), underlying the crucial role of transporters in cell functioning. Two molecules of glycolate are transported from the chloroplast to the peroxisome where they are converted to glycine, which in turn, is exported to the mitochondria where it is respired, resulting in the release of CO₂ and NH₃. Serine is transported from mitochondria to the peroxisome where it is transformed to glycerate, which flows to the chloroplast. Glycerate kinase seems to be absent from diatom genomes, rendering the C₂ oxidative photosynthetic cycle incomplete. It is possible that glycine, serine and other intermediates of the pathways are used in other reactions such as glutathione synthesis (Raven & Beardall, 1981) or glyoxylate metabolism (Paul & Volcani, 1976).
Table 2.3. Examples of reporter protein used to elucidate proteins subcellular localization in diatoms.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Protein family</th>
<th>Taxon</th>
<th>Proteins</th>
<th>Reporter</th>
<th>Localization</th>
<th>Confirmed</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>β-CA</td>
<td>Phaeodactylum tricornutum</td>
<td>PtCA1 &amp; PtCA2</td>
<td>GFP</td>
<td>Central part of the chloroplast (Pyrenoid)</td>
<td>Immunocytochemistry</td>
<td>Tachibana et al. (2011)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>α-CA</td>
<td>Phaeodactylum tricornutum</td>
<td>CA-IX</td>
<td>GFP</td>
<td>?</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Tachibana et al. (2011)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y-CA</td>
<td>Phaeodactylum tricornutum</td>
<td>CA-VIII</td>
<td>GFP</td>
<td>Mitochondria</td>
<td>Fluorescent dye (mitotracker)</td>
<td>Tachibana et al. (2011)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>y-CA</td>
<td>Thalassiosira pseudonana</td>
<td>CA8, CA9, CA13</td>
<td>GFP</td>
<td>Mitochondria</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

strategies of *P. tricornutum* at growth limiting levels of dissolved iron. The study identified 212 induced and 26 down-regulated genes. Processes such as photosynthesis, mitochondrial electron transport and nitrate assimilation were down-regulated, resulting in a reduced income in C and N atoms.

This was compensated for by nitrogen and carbon reallocation from protein and carbohydrate degradation, and adaptation to chlorophyll biosynthesis and pigment metabolism, with differential responses to oxidative stress.

To understand the functioning of metabolic networks it is important to know the direction of atoms and/or metabolite flux. This can be estimated by comparing transcript and protein levels. For instance, in *T. pseudonana* experiencing nitrogen starvation, protein, phosphoglycerate mutase, enolase and fructose1,6-bisphosphate aldolase increase (Hockin et al. 2012), whereas transcripts coding for pyruvate kinase decrease (Mock et al. 2008), suggesting that either gluconeogenesis or glycolysis is promoted under these conditions. The increase in transcript levels of phosphofructokinase and two pyruvate kinases, and the decrease in pyruvate kinase suggest that carbon flow was primarily oriented in the direction of glycolysis. However, large discrepancies between transcript level, protein level and biological functions are repeatedly reported.

They are explained by the existence of at least two regulation levels (*i.e.* transcriptional and translational) during protein production. Therefore, more traditional approaches, such as the use of radiolabelled tracers should be used to determine metabolic fluxes. For instance, Guiheneuf et al. (2011) used [14C] sodium bicarbonate and [1-14C] sodium acetate to investigate the pathways involved in the biosynthesis of longchain polyunsaturated fatty acids in the prymnesiohyphete *Pavlova lutheri* (Droop) J.C. Green during photosynthesis in relation to light intensity. In this alga, lipid production, including galacto-lipids and phospholipids, increased with light intensity when the cells were incubated with [14C] bicarbonate (inorganic carbon), but was less sensitive to differences in light intensity when incubated with [1-14C] acetate, a
heterotrophic carbon source that stimulates the synthesis of monounsaturated fatty acids.

This suggests that *P. lutheri* has two distinct enzyme pools involved in long chain poly unsaturated fatty acids synthesis. The pool that is regulated by light intensity would be localized within the chloroplasts, whereas the second would be extra chloroplastidic and independent of light intensity (Guiheneuf et al. 2011). This study also underlines the need to correlate biochemical data with the localization of the enzymatic activities. Unfortunately, radio labelling is not appropriate for metabolomic investigations.

Genome sequencing and metabolic network reconstitution have revealed that thousands of gene products interact within a cell. The number of putative interactions increases exponentially with the number of partners, and the complexity of the metabolic network(s) rapidly becomes difficult to investigate from gene expression or protein abundance. Combining transcriptomics and proteomic investigations with metabolomic approaches is thus a major goal for physiology today. The need for metabolomic data is emphasized by the chemophysical properties and biological activities of metabolites, which allow a large range of different combinations. There is much more complexity than that deduced from transcripts or protein profiles alone. Moreover, the general assumption that biological activity varies in accordance with transcripts or protein abundance more often fails because of enzymes kinetic, thermodynamic and stoichiometry constraints.

The complexity of physiological regulation is greater because metabolite fluxes are not obligatorily linked to enzyme levels. Moreover, even if genotypetophenotype relationships have been described for many organisms, numerous protein coding genes remain functionally uncharacterized.

Using sequence homology, only ~50% of diatom genes have been assigned to a known function. This is partly due to the lack of information on transcriptomes from other organisms taxonomically close to diatoms (Maheswari et al. 2009), and reflects the rapid evolution of diatoms (Bowler et al. 2008). Proteins with obscure functions (POFs) account for 44% of the putative proteome of *P. tricornutum* (Maheswari et al. 2010). By contrast, most of the proteins with defined functions (PDFs) in *T. pseudonana* have orthologues in other Heterokonts, and have also been found in Viridiplantae and Opisthokonta. Maheswari et al. (2010) also pointed out that under specific growth conditions, diatoms can express novel transcripts not predicted by conventional tools or homology methods, and therefore of unknown function. Another challenge to assigning functional roles to proteins is when low similarities between proteins require biochemical control, even if *in silico* comparison with known sequences can be made. For example, for the CA enzymes in *P. tricornutum*, seven CAs have been predicted by conserved domains, but need biochemical investigation to be formally identified (Kroth et al. 2008).
Another difficulty to inferring physiological regulation is that multiple genes can encode the same biochemical function. This is the case for the enzymes involved in carbon pathways in *P. tricornutum*, where it was proposed that both PEPCK and malate dehydrogenase/malic enzyme decarboxylate oxaloacetate *C₄*-acid reside in mitochondria (Kroth et al. 2008). It is therefore very important to relate metabolite concentration to pathway flux, and knowing entrypoint substrates or products and their flux regulation, relies on transcription, protein abundance and activity, and biological response information. Faced with this complexity, novel approaches have recently been developed to decipher biological networks.

Metabolic network reconstruction is now one of the best tools to quantify genotype–phenotype relationships. This requires the identification of missing reactions in the metabolic network, and genomescale metabolic network models such as constraint-based modeling (CBM) have been used to predict the phenotypes of various microorganisms (Oberhardt et al. 2009). More recently, the association of genes with network reactions has been developed. In this approach, named MIRAGE (metabolic reconstruction via functional genomics), missing reactions whose presence is supported by functional genomic data are sought (Vitkin & Shlomi, 2012). Another recent approach using protein–protein interactions, the so-called Interactome Map, has also been used to clarify how genotype-phenotype relationships are mediated in organisms. This methodology was developed in several organisms, such as *Arabidopsis thaliana* (L.) Heynh. (Arabidopsis Interactome Mapping Consortium, 2012), and has improved the understanding of biological processes and global organization, as well as generating new hypotheses on the functional links between proteins and pathways.

A similar approach would be ideal for deciphering diatom physiology and helping us to understand the biological complexity of these organisms. To date, decoding all biological reactions has not been an easy task because of the huge numbers of metabolites present in an organism, even unicellular ones. Current estimations give from 4000 to 25 000 compounds per organism, and the plant kingdom alone probably contains more than 100 000 metabolites (Trethewey, 2004). Most often, studies only consider metabolites corresponding to a few percent of the existing components, even when new technologies allowing the extraction of ~1000 compounds from *Arabidopsis*, for instance are used (Giavalisco et al. 2008; Iijima et al. 2008; May et al. 2008; Krall et al. 2009). In addition, the turnover time for most metabolites is less than 1 s, much shorter than the protein turnover times, rendering metabolomic analyses very complicated (Arrivault et al. 2009). Moreover, metabolite isolation procedures have still to be refined to avoid artifacts. The use of highend machines (resonance-MS, orbitrap-MS, etc.) will probably expand the list of detected metabolites (Fernie & Schauer, 2009). Another challenge is understanding metabolic compartmentalization and the fluxes between the compartments, a crucial key to closing the gap between proteomic and metabolomic approaches.
2.7 Towards the understanding of metabolic control

Variation in environmental constraints and intracellular demands modulate metabolic activity (e.g. longterm: Falkowski et al. 2004; shortterm: Nguyen-Deroche et al. 2009). For instance, when the metal concentration increases in the environment, photosynthesis is impaired and defence mechanisms are activated (Bertrand et al. 2001; Nguyen-Deroche et al. 2012; for reviews, see Solymosi & Bertrand, 2012). It is beyond the scope of this article to review the different regulation possibilities and we will only insist on one crucial aspect, i.e. the role of transcription factors (TFs). Regulation of gene expression is central to all organisms and provides a complex control mechanism by which organisms modulate developmental processes and metabolic pathways and respond to stresses. This regulation is coordinated by a number of mechanisms that involve DNA methylation, chromatin organization, dimerization and sequencespecific binding of TFs (Maniatis & Reed, 2002). In addition to recognizing specific DNA motifs in gene regulatory regions, TFs can activate or repress transcription, possibly by interaction with other proteins. A significant proportion of protein encoded genes are dedicated to the control of gene expression (for example, 6% of the ∼27 500 protein coding genes of Arabidopsis; Feller et al. 2011). The function of a few TFs has remained conserved between plants and animals, such as E2F family members, which control core cellcycle functions (Inze & De Veylder, 2006). However, most of the TFs have diverged significantly in function but keep conserved DNA-binding domains. Based on similarities in the DNA binding domain, TFs have been categorized into families or super-families, several of which are composed of 100 or more members (Pabo & Sauer, 1992). For example, the MYB super-family is one of the largest and most diverse families of sequence specific TFs, particularly represented in plants with 100–200 MYB family members commonly found in individual plant species (Prouse & Campbell, 2012).

Genome-wide analyses of P. tricornutum and T. pseudonana diatoms reveal the presence of numbers of transcription factors families, the most represented being heat shock factors (HSF) and MYB proteins, then basic leucine zipper (bZIP) and various type of zincfinger transcription factors (Rayko et al. 2010). However, little is known about the specific transcription factors involved in any defined pathway.

Harada’s team has identified CO₂–cAMP responsive elements (CCREs) in the promoter of the intracellular (chloroplastic) pyrenoidal β-CA of P. tricornutum (ptca1) that act as sensor of CO₂ conditions and repress the ptca1 promoter under elevated CO₂ concentration (Harada et al. 2005; Harada et al. 2006). These CCREs cis elements are thought to bind bZIP transcription factors and at least one candidate, PtbZIP11, was identified in P. tricornutum (Ohno et al. 2012).

The cryptochrome/photolyase1 of P. tricornutum (PtCPF_1) was shown to be involved in both DNA 6–4 photoproduct repair and transcriptional repression of the circadian clock in a heterologous mammalian cell system (Coesel et al. 2009).
Furthermore, PtCPF\textsubscript{1} seems to have a wide role in blue-light-regulated gene expression in diatoms. Indeed PtCPF\textsubscript{1} overexpression in \textit{P. tricornutum} results in the up-regulation of genes encoding the tetrapyrrole biosynthetic enzymes, whereas genes of the carotenoid biosynthesis pathway and nitrogen metabolism were down-regulated (Coesel et al. 2009). These results indicate that CPF\textsubscript{1} may act as a blue-light-sensitive transcription factor.

A CPF\textsubscript{1} protein is present in both diatoms \textit{P. tricornutum} and \textit{T. pseudonana} (Takahashi et al. 2007; Coesel et al. 2009). Surprisingly, this CPF\textsubscript{1} protein is phylogenetically closer to the animal cryptochrome/6–4 photolyase, but neither diatom taxon contains an orthologue of plant cryptochromes (Coesel et al. 2009). Recently, the transcriptional induction of the diatom specific cyclin (dsCYC\textsubscript{2}), which controls the onset of cell division, was shown to be triggered by blue light in a fluence rate dependent manner.

Consistent with this, dsCYC\textsubscript{2} is a transcriptional target of the blue light sensor AUREOCHROME\textsubscript{1a}, which functions synergistically with the bZIP transcription factor bZIP\textsubscript{10} to induce dsCYC\textsubscript{2} transcription (Huysman et al. 2013).

Apart from these few examples, the transcription factors involved in gene regulation in diatoms remain largely unknown. The identification of transcription factors and characterization of their role may help to understand the molecular and cellular mechanisms of metabolism reorientation in diatoms. In particular, the role of Myb transcription factor in development and response to biotic and abiotic stresses is largely studied in higher plants (Prouse & Campbell, 2012), for example, the transcription factors involved in jasmonate-elicited secondary metabolisms have been recently reviewed by De Geyter et al. (2012).

**2.8 Conclusions and future perspectives**

The turbulent evolutionary history of diatoms has resulted in microorganisms presenting unique cytological, physiological and biochemical properties. From the genomic data, the metabolic and regulatory networks can be reconstituted and hypotheses on their interactions and/or regulation can be proposed (Fernie et al. 2012). Their functioning can be studied at several levels, \textit{i.e.} transcription (transcriptomics), presence of proteins/enzymes (global and/or subcellular proteomics) and quantification of metabolites (metabolomics). Although the complement of metabolic pathways that contribute to energy management in diatom cells has been identified, the direct responses of the different pathways, their contributive flow and their integration with one another are not well enough known, yet are central and fundamental to maintain a healthy organism (Hibberd & Weber, 2012). Few studies have used different ‘omics’ side by side and therefore a comparative assessment of transcriptomic, proteomic, metabolomic and modelling analysis is still required. Moreover, vital
information on the cellular localization of the cell activities as well as on the various possibilities for metabolites transport across membranes is missing (Beebo et al. 2013; Pfeil et al. 2013). The general lack of knowledge about intracellular transporters is a major problem when it comes to building structural models of metabolic and regulatory networks. Actually, the presence or absence of transporters for given metabolites affect cooperation between the cell compartments, and possible routes through the metabolic networks. Within the frame of biotechnological applications, the addition of adequate transporters through genetic engineering have possibly resulted to dramatic increase of the resistance to stress.

For instance, in tomato transgenic plants over-expressing a vacuolar Na\textsuperscript{+}/H\textsuperscript{+} antiport were able to grow, flower, and produce fruit in the presence of 200 mM sodium chloride whereas the control plant died under this condition (Zhang & Blumwald, 2001). To our knowledge, such a possibility was not yet tested in diatom. The dynamics of metabolite pools and its control constitutes data needed to understand the physiological responses.

The identification of the transcription factors mediating the metabolism orientation in response to stresses is obviously crucial, especially as diatoms may trigger specific and original metabolic and/or regulatory pathways while reaching a new equilibrium. These data are also needed for the development of efficient blue technologies, especially where microalgal engineering is concerned (Cadoret et al. 2012). Actually, this knowledge could be used to select the adequate step(s) of the metabolic or regulatory network that has (have) to be engineered. For instance, placing the entire metabolic pathway in one organelle rather than within two compartments significantly increased the biofuel production yield of yeasts (Avalos et al. 2013; DeLoache & Dueber, 2013). Our ability to obtain and integrate all these information into models will open new avenues about the understanding on the plasticity of the cellular life and how deviation impacts the maintaining a healthy organism.

2.9 Acknowledgment

The authors are very grateful to the Associate Editor and Editor-in-Chief of Diatom Research for their help in preparing the final version of this manuscript.

2.10 References


3.1 Abstract

Photosynthetic diatoms adapt to changing irradiance in a very efficient way, as they are exposed to rapid changes in light intensity in their nature, and must be able to acclimate their light harvesting systems to varying light conditions. Molecular mechanisms behind light acclimation in diatoms are largely unknown. In this work we report the differences in physiological, biological and molecular mechanisms of different light acclimation (LL, ML, HL) in *Phaeodactylum tricornutum* using a set of experiments including transcriptom. Molecular, biological and physiological responses were studied at three growth phases (lag, exponential, plateau). The integrated results indicate that the impact of ML and HL on diatom cells were similar but quite different from LL. In addition of light, growth phase and aging of the culture could affect pigments concentration and primary metabolites. The trend of gene expression coding enzymes in
central carbon metabolism pathways differed under LL, but the orientation of the metabolisms was toward pyruvate formation in all three light intensities. LL provided a condition for cells to accumulate chrysolaminarin and lipid, while ML mostly stimulated lipid synthesis. A significant increase in the amount of protein was observed under HL. We concluded that pyruvate is a key intermediate in diatom cell to synthesis valuable compounds and serves as precursor of PEP that is also a key point for the synthesis of valuable compounds such as aromatic amino acids and polyphenolics.

3.2 Introduction

Microalgae denote a wide variety of waterliving photosynthetic microorganisms capable of a high productivity per unit area when compared to other photosynthetic organisms as higher plants (Gordon & Polle, 2007). Among the microalgae, diatoms constitute the most abundant group of marine eukaryotic organisms with more than 200 genera and approximately 100,000 species, and many have still to be discovered (e.g., Heydarizadeh et al. 2014; Bork et al. 2015). Altogether, diatoms contribute to 20–40% to the primary productivity of the ocean, which is more than all terrestrial rainforests combined (Hasle et al. 1996; Field et al. 1998; Granum et al. 2005; Bowler et al. 2010). Diatoms are able to adapt to a broad range of environmental conditions including light irradiances (Gordon & Polle, 2007; Spetea et al. 2014) through adjustment of their physiology and biochemical activity (Obata et al. 2013; Spetea et al. 2014; Fortunato et al. 2015; Roháček et al. 2014), and maintaining high growth rates and a high efficiency of carbon incorporation into different organic metabolites (Falkowski & Laroche, 1991; Lavaud et al. 2003; Nymark et al. 2009). Yet, excessive or insufficient incident light constrains diatom optimal performance in terms of biomass and biomass composition, i.e., metabolites (Goldman, 1980; Vidoudez & Pohnert, 2008; Barofsky et al. 2009; Barofsky et al. 2010; Carvalho et al. 2011). Metabolites are generated along biochemical pathways, including carbon metabolism that appeared to be tightly regulated by light (Dron et al. 2012).

These responses occur through a number of mechanisms including photoacclimation (physiological acclimation) and photoadaptation (genetic adaptation) (Nymark et al. 2009). Both mechanisms are linked and may work together to maximize the coupling between light regulation and cell cycle progression (Nymark et al. 2009; Depauw et al. 2012). Since the sequencing of diatom genomes (Armburst et al. 2004; Bowler et al. 2008), many progresses have been made in the elucidation and the understanding of diatom metabolism and physiology (Roberts et al. 2007; Nymark et al. 2009; Valenzuela et al. 2012; Herbstová et al. 2015). However little is still known about carbon flux direction inside the cell, partition between the different pathways and molecular mechanisms behind light acclimation in diatoms. One way to follow these mechanisms consists in exploring genes coding proteins associated with the pathways because the
level of gene expression may affect enzyme amount and, thus, flux distribution (Depauw et al. 2012; Heydarizadeh et al. 2014).

The marine diatom *Phaeodactylum tricornutum* belongs to Bacillariophyta, a phylum comprising one-third of all known marine phytoplankton. The recent completion of the genome sequence of this diatom (Bowler et al. 2008) made *P. tricornutum* a ‘model’ diatom for genomic, biochemical and physiological studies (Ge et al. 2014; Zhang & Hu, 2014). The transcriptome of *P. tricornutum* has been studied in a few contexts, such as silicon metabolism (Sapriel et al. 2009), short-term light acclimation (Nymark et al. 2009), carbon fixation, storage and utilization (Chauton et al. 2013) and nitrogen stress (Levitan et al. 2015). Molecular mechanisms behind light acclimation during diatom growth remain largely unknown. For instance, growth-related modifications in gene expression induced by different light intensities in *P. tricornutum* are not yet described. In this study, we investigate the mechanisms of light acclimation in *P. tricornutum* along diatom growth and its consequence of diatom physiology. We examined how *P. tricornutum* is capable of efficient execution of photoprotective mechanisms, changes in the composition of the photosynthetic machinery and remodels intermediates of central carbon metabolism that enable the diatom to respond different levels of received light energy.

### 3.3 Material and methods

#### 3.3.1 Phaeodactylum tricornutum

**Empire:** Eucaryota  
**Kingdom:** Chromalveolata  
**Phylum:** Heterokontophyta  
**Classe:** Bacillariophyceae  
**Order:** Naviculales  
**Family:** Phaeodactylaceae  
**Genus:** Phaeodactylum  
**Species:** *P. tricornutum*  
**Binomiale name:** *Phaeodactylum tricornutum* (Bohlin, 1897)

*P. tricornutum* is a marine phytoplankton and the only species in the genus *Phaeodactylum*. The diatom can be in different morphotypes: oval (8µm×3µm), fusiform or triradiate ranging in size from 25 to 35 µm long, with arms slightly bent (Lewin, 1958) (Figure 3.1). Recently, *P. tricornutum* cruciform morphotype was observed by He et al. (2014). Cell morphotype changes can be stimulated by environmental conditions (De Martino et al. 2011). The organization and structure of the cytoplasmic organelles is similar in all the first three morphotypes, except that the vacuoles occupy the extra volume created by the arms of the fusiform and triradiate cells. The frustule in fusiform and triradiate cells is organic; in the oval type it may be organic or one of the valves may have a silica frustule surrounded by an organic wall. In all cells, the organic cell wall has up to 10 silica bands (13 nm wide) embedded in its surface in the girdle region, lacks
girdle bands, and has an outer corrugated cell wall layer, except in the girdle region (Borowitzka, 1999). In higher plants, it has been reported, relative to organic cell walls, silica frustules require less energy to synthesize that might be a significant saving on the overall cell energy budget (Raven, 1983). In diatoms, Milligan & Morel (2002) have suggested that the biogenic silica in diatom cell walls acts as an effective pH buffering agent, facilitating the conversion of bicarbonate to dissolved CO₂.

![Figure 3.1](image-url)  
*Figure 3.1. Light micrographs of (clockwise from top right) triradiate, round, oval, fusiform (UTEX 646) performed in the laboratory using optical microscopy (GX 400)) and cruciform Phaeodactylum tricornutum (He et al. 2014).*

### 3.3.2 Experiment strategy and sampling

Approximately $10^5$ cells mL$^{-1}$ of axenic culture of *Phaeodactylum tricornutum* Bohlin (UTEX 646) available in MicroMar team, Laboratoire de Biologie Marine of the University of Le Mans (France) were batch cultured in 200 mL of f/2 prepared with artificial seawater (Guillard & Ryther, 1962) in three biological replications. Cells were irradiated at a photon flux density of 30, 300 and 1000 μmol m$^{-2}$ s$^{-1}$ as low light (LL), medium light (ML) and high light (HL), respectively, using cool-white fluorescent tubes (Philips Master TLD 90 DE luxe 58W/965 and Osram L58/77 FLUORA). These levels of irradiance were choosen according to the value of $E_k$ parameters obtained for *P. tricornutum* grown under 300 μmol m$^{-2}$ s$^{-1}$. The value of $E_k$ was measured as explained...
in Supplemental data 3.5 and Supplemental Table 3.5. While 300 µmol m⁻² s⁻¹ was close to the optimum irradiance level, 30 and 1000 µmol m⁻² s⁻¹ where much below and higher this level, providing stress conditions.

The photon flux densities were measured using a 4π waterproof light probe (Walz, Germany) connected to a LiCor 189 quantum meter (Tremblin et al. 2000). In all cases a 12/12 h light/dark cycle and 21°C were applied. Once the axenic cultures reached sufficient cell densities in phase 1, 2 and 3 (Supplemental Figure 3.1) cells were harvested for following measurements.

### 3.3.3 Growth determination of microalgae

Cell counting was carried out regularly using a Neubauer hemocytometer. Growth rate was obtained after fitting growth kinetics with the sigmoid equation using the freeware CurveExpert 1.4 software (http://www.curveexpert.net/). For short time interval, the growth rate \( \mu_{stt} \) was estimated using equation 1

\[
\mu_{stt} \text{ (cell d}^{-1}) = \frac{\ln (N_t) - \ln (N_{t-1})}{\Delta t}
\]  

(Eq. 1)

with \( N_t \) and \( N_{t-1} \) are the number of cells at time \( t \) and \( t-1 \).

### 3.3.4 Pigment extraction

Chlorophyll and carotenoids were measured according to the methods described by Jeffrey et al. (1997). Briefly, an aliquot of diatom culture (2 mL) was centrifuged (16100 \( \times \) g, 5 min, 5°C) (Eppendorf Centrifuge 5415R, Beckman). The supernatant was discarded and the pellet containing biomass was mixed in 2 mL of a 95.5% acetone and the mixture was homogenized by grinding in a mortar and was placed in the dark at 4°C for at least 4 h. Cell debris was removed by centrifugation under the same conditions and supernatant was used for the assay.

\[
\text{Chlorophyll a} = 11.77 (A665nm - A750nm) - 0.82 (A650nm - A750nm)
\]  

(Eq. 2)

\[
\text{Chlorophyll c} = 26.27 (A650nm - A750nm) - 3.52 (A665nm - A750nm)
\]  

(Eq. 3)

\[
\text{Carotenoids} = [(A443nm - A750nm) - (21.5 \times 10^{-3}*\text{Chl a}) - (369.1 \times 10^{-3}*\text{Chl c})]/(166.0 \times 10^{-3})
\]  

(Eq. 4)

### 3.3.5 Photosynthetic and respiratory activity, PI-curve

Rates of oxygen evolution were measured at 21°C in the light and in the dark-using a fiber optic oxygen meter (Pyroscience® FireSting \( O_2 \), Germany) using a diatom suspension (1.5 mL). For phase characterization, the cells were illuminated with the different growth light, except for PI-curves for which the cells were irradiated with different
photon flux densities ranging from 0 to 2500 μmol m$^{-2}$ s$^{-1}$. For respiration, the cells were maintained in darkness for the whole measurement. Gross photosynthesis was calculated as net photosynthesis plus respiration, assuming that respiration was the same in light and in darkness. Calculated values were normalized for cell density or chlorophyll a amount.

To derive the values of $E_k$, $\alpha$ and $P_{B\text{max}}$ the PI-curves were fitted using the model of Eilers & Peeters (1988) using the CurveExpert freeware (Supplemental data 3.5).

### 3.3.6 Chlorophyll fluorescence yield measurement

Chlorophyll fluorescence yield was monitored at the growth temperature using a fluorimeter FMS1 (Hansatech®) after a dark adaptation period (15 min) (Roháček et al. 2014). Briefly, $F_0$ was recorded under a weak modulated light (less than 15 μmol m$^{-2}$ s$^{-1}$, 800 Hz). NPQ was induced during a 7 min non-saturating white actinic radiation (photon flux density 800 μmol m$^{-2}$ s$^{-1}$, KL 1500; H. Walz, Germany). At the end of the actinic illumination, the dark relaxation of the Chlorophyll fluorescence yield was recorded in order to allow quenching analysis. For each sample, the minimum ($F_0$, $F'_0$, $F''_0$), maximum ($F_M$, $F'_M$, $F''_M$) and maximum variable ($F_V$, $F'_V$, $F''_V$) Chlorophyll fluorescence yields in a dark-adapted state, in a light-adapted state and during the dark relaxation were measured, respectively (Roháček et al. 2014) (for representative recording, see Supplemental Figure 3.4).

The measurements were performed by using 2 mL of culture according to the protocol published by Roháček et al. (2014). It is divided into three phases: dark adaptation state, light adaptation state and dark relaxation of the non-photochemical quenching. To avoid CO$_2$ shortage during measurements, the cultures were provided with NaHCO$_3$ (final, 4 mM/stock, 0.2 M). Fluorescence parameters were calculated using the described equations in Supplemental data 3.4.

The analysis of the qN relaxation kinetic into its components qNi, qNf and qNs was performed as explained in Roháček et al. (2014). The quality of the regression procedure was assessed using two parameters: (1) the values of $q_{N1} = q_{Nf} + q_{Ni} + q_{Ns}$ were compared to the experimental values of qN and (2) coefficient of determination of the fitting ($R^2$) was taken as a measure of how well observed outcomes are replicated by the regression model (Steel & Torrie, 1960). In this work a regression was considered as good when $R^2 \geq 0.90$.

### 3.3.7 Quantification of intracellular carbon and nitrogen, cellular carbon and nitrogen quotas, C and N uptake rate

Cell nitrogen and carbon quota ($Q_N$ and $Q_C$) were determined for each growth phase (see Supplemental Figure 3.1) using a CHN elemental analyser (EAGER 300, Thermo
Samples were filtered through precombusted Whatman GF/C glass filters under gentle vacuum (50 mm Hg) and dried at 70°C for 48h. The volume of solution filtered was adjusted to have either 0.1 or 0.3 \(10^{-8}\) cells per filter (Marchetti et al. 2012). The C (\(\rho_c\)) and N uptake rate (\(\rho_N\)) were estimated according to Marchetti et al. (2012) using equations 5 and 6:

\[
\rho_c (\text{pg cell}^{-1} \text{d}^{-1}) = \mu_{\text{st}} Q_{C} \quad \text{(Eq. 5)}
\]

\[
\rho_N (\text{pg cell}^{-1} \text{d}^{-1}) = \mu_{\text{st}} Q_{N} \quad \text{(Eq. 6)}
\]

Total amount of C immobilized (pg) = \(Q_{C} N_{\text{phase} 3}\) (Eq. 7)

Total amount of N immobilized (pg) = \(Q N N_{\text{phase} 3}\) (Eq. 8)

### 3.3.8 Determination of protein content

To isolate total proteins, cell cultures were centrifuged (5000×g, 5 min, 4°C). Harvested cells were overlaid in 2 mM EDTA (Ethylene Diamine Tetra Acetic Acid) and were homogenized using Ultra Turrax® (IKAAnalysetechnik GmbH) for 10 min. After centrifugation of the mixture (13000×g, 5 min, 4°C), the supernatant was taken and protein amount was measured using spectrophotometer at 595 nm. Bradford assay was routinely used to determine the concentration of protein in the samples (Bradford, 1976).

### 3.3.9 Determination of lipid content

For lipid extraction, \(10^8\)-\(10^9\) cells were harvested as explained above. The lipid content was determined by the gravimetric method (Mettler Toledo M5 25-60C) and the content pg cell\(^{-1}\) (Kendel et al. 2013).

### 3.3.10 Determination of chrysolaminarin content

Cellular \(\beta-1,3\)-glucan was extracted according to the method explained by Granum & Myklestad (2002) with some modifications. Briefly, \(10^7\) cells were harvested as explained above. Each filter was transferred directly to a glass vial, and stored at 20 °C until analysis. The cellular \(\beta-1,3\)-glucans were extracted by \(H_2SO_4\) (50 mM) at 60 °C for 10 min using a water bath. The extract was centrifuged at 14000 rpm for 10 min (4°C). The resulting supernatant was collected and transferred into a new tube and dried at 60 °C. 25 µL of 3% aqueous phenol and 2.5 ml concentrated \(H_2SO_4\) were added to 2 mL sample in a test tube and the mixture was immediately vortexed. The tubes was allowed to stand for 30 min, and then cooled with running water. Absorbance at 485 nm was measured. The amount of reducing sugar was calculated using glucose (stock concentration: 50 µg mL\(^{-1}\)) as a standard.
3.3.11 Primer design

A total of 33 enzymes involved in carbon metabolism pathways from the diatom *P. tricornutum* were selected and the corresponding genes (74) coding for each enzymes (Supplemental Table 3.6) were searched in genomic data published by Kroth et al. (2008) (diatomcyc: http://www.diatomcyc.org; JGI portal: http://genome.jgipsf.org/Phatr2/Phatr2.home.html; BLAST: http://blast.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/Blast.cgi). Primers were designed using Primer Express version 2.0 (Applied Biosystems, Foster City, CA) (primer sequences of genes and housekeeping genes are shown in Supplemental Table 3.6).

3.3.12 mRNA sampling and extraction

mRNA extractions were done at phase 1, 2 and 3 by filtration in order to have 1.5 $10^8$ cells per filter (see above for details). The filters were immediately flash frozen in liquid nitrogen and stored in −80 °C until RNA extraction. Total RNA was extracted following the Spectrum Total RNA kit (Sigma Aldrich) protocol with on-column DNase digestion as suggested by the manufacturer and RNA concentration of samples were determined by UV absorption at 280/260 nm (Nanodrop).

3.3.13 Real-time quantitative PCR and analyses

One microgram of total RNA was reverse transcribed into cDNA using the MMLV reverse transcriptase (Promega) following the manufacturer’s protocol. Real time PCR reactions were performed using a Step One plus apparatus (Applied Biosystems) with the Gotaq QPCR Master Mix (Promega) and specific primers described in Supplemental Table 3.6. The threshold cycle (Ct) was determined by the Step One plus version 2.1 software. The efficiency of the PCR reaction was calculated for each gene using the Ct slope method, which involves generating a dilution series of the target template and determining the Ct value for each dilution. A plot of Ct versus log (concentration) was constructed and efficiency (E) expressed as $E = 10^{-1/slope}$. Efficiencies calculated for all genes (90≤E≤110) indicated correct PCR reactions without inhibition (Gašparič et al. 2008).

Amplified products of the expected sizes were excised from agarose gel and purified using the QIAEX II gel extraction kit (Qiagen), then cloned into pGEMT plasmid vector (Promega) and sequenced by Beckman Coulter Genomics (Sanger sequencing). BLAST analysis confirmed the sequence identification.

Out of the 12 housekeeping gene (HKG) candidates, the most stable (tbp, ubi and rps) were selected due to high Ct standard deviation (>1) and weak pairwise correlations (p>0.05) compared to the 9 others (p<0.001). The selected housekeeping genes were used as the endogenous control genes to normalize the expression of the 74 target
genes, using the Bestkeeper Software (Pfaffl et al. 2004). This software determines the optimal housekeeping genes employing pairwise correlations and calculates the geometric mean of the best suited ones for accurate normalization of the target genes (TG). The calculation of the relative expression (RE) was based on the comparative Ct method (Livak & Schmittgen, 2001):

\[
RE = \frac{(E_{TG})^{\Delta Ct_{TG}}}{(E_{HKG})^{\Delta Ct_{HKG}}} \quad \text{with} \quad \Delta Ct = C_{Calibrator} - C_{Sample} \quad \text{(Pfaffl et al., 2004)}.
\]

PCA analyses were performed by SPSS (Statistical Package for the Social Sciences) and Heatmaps performed using Netwalker 1.0. Statistical analyses for physiological data were performed by t-test and p≤0.05 was considered statistically significant.

3.4 Results

3.4.1 Effect of light intensity on the growth of *Phaeodactylum tricornutum*

Light is a major factor regulating the development of microalga (Spetea et al. 2014; see also chapter 6). Light regime, including short terms and long-terms intensity fluctuations, are major factors affecting growth and biochemical composition of microalgae (Wahidin et al. 2013). Regardless the growth irradiance intensity, the growth curve of *P. tricornutum* could be fitted using a logistic law. The curves presented typical phases *i.e.* lag, exponential and plateau phases. In the rest of the manuscript, we will refer to these different phases as phase 1, phase 2 and phase 3, respectively (Supplemental Figure 3.1). No significant difference (p<0.05) between the growth curves of *P. tricornutum* under medium light (ML) and high light (HL) was observed. Cell density under low light (LL) was significantly lower (p<0.05) than under ML and HL and growth phases were delayed in LL. Accordingly, growth rate ‘\( \mu \)’ and duplication time ‘\( G \)’, were similar under ML and HL, whereas these values were lower under LL (Table 3.1).

**Table 3.1. Impact of the light intensity on culture growth rate and generation time of *Phaeodactylum tricornutum*.** The growth rates (\( \mu \)) and duplication times (\( G \)) were calculated from the curves of Figure 3.1 using the equation indicated in the ‘Material and method’ section. Under LL, the rate of cell division was *circa* 30% less than under ML and HL. Mean values ± SE (n= 3–5). Significant different data are indicated by an asterisk (Tukey Test, p≤0.05).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Irradiance (( \mu \text{mol m}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1} ))</th>
<th>30 (LL)</th>
<th>300 (ML)</th>
<th>1000 (HL)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( \mu ) (day(^{-1} ))</td>
<td>0.340 ± 0.003*</td>
<td>0.873 ± 0.009</td>
<td>0.865 ± 0.010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( d ) (day)</td>
<td>2.039 ± 0.048*</td>
<td>0.797 ± 0.008</td>
<td>0.806 ± 0.009</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Altogether, the results demonstrated that *P. tricornutum* was able to grow well under the three light conditions. Because cell physiology is not independent of growth
conditions (Klumpp et al. 2009; Scott et al. 2010; Regenberg et al. 2006; Brauer et al. 2008), the elucidation of the underlying mechanisms requires comparing samples being in close physiological state. To fulfill this condition, the time-course of the daily division rate ($\mu_{ddr}$) along the growth period was calculated for each light intensity (data not shown). Regardless the light intensity, the time courses present a bell-shape peaking at the middle of the exponential phase and zeroing in lag and plateau phases (data not shown). Sampling times were chosen when time-courses were reaching its maximum and were close to zero. These events are indicated in Supplemental Figure 3.1, by arrows.

### 3.4.2 N and C fluxes to lipid, carbohydrate and protein

Because the primary metabolism and physiological activities primarily rely on the C and N availability and cell uptake, the cellular N and C quota ($Q_N$ and $Q_C$, respectively) were recorded. The time-courses of $Q_N$ and $Q_C$ were different according to the irradiance level: under LL, $Q_N$ and $Q_C$ decreased from phase 1 to phase 2 and increased from phase 2 to phase 3. Under ML, $Q_N$ and $Q_C$ decreased continuously whereas under HL, the decrease occurred only between phase 2 and phase 3 (Figures 3.2.A and 3.2.B). From these data, the N and C uptake rates could be estimated using equation 5 and 6. As expected the uptake was the most intense in phase 2 and much reduced in phase 3 (Figure 3.2.C and 3.2.D). When expressed relatively to $Q_N$, $Q_C$ varied only significantly in phase 3 in function of the growth light intensity: it increased from LL to HL (data not shown).

Having determined $Q_N$ and $Q_C$ as well as the amount of cells present in phase 3, the total amounts of N and C immobilized in the algae were estimated (see equations 7 and 8 in the Material and method section). The yield of C fixation ranged between 73 (LL and ML) and 78% (HL) whereas the yield of N fixation was around 10 %, regardless of the light intensity (Table 3.2). Altogether, the results indicate that the synergism between N and C metabolisms was almost not disrupted at any moment of the growth in our condition.

The fixed N and C are used for the synthesis of cellular building blocks including lipids, proteins and carbohydrates. Modification(s) of the chemical or physical environmental stimuli, including light intensity may change the orientation of the fixed C into the different pathways (Hu et al. 2008; Sharma et al. 2012). Growth phase and aging of the culture can also affect TAG content and fatty acid composition (Fidalgo et al. 1998; Hu et al. 2008). To evaluate if shifts in C and N orientation occurred, total amount of lipids, proteins and carbohydrates (LPC) were measured in the culture media and in the cells. None of these compounds could be detected in the culture media (data not shown) showing that export of such material was low under our conditions. We cannot
Figure 3.2. Modifications of the carbon, nitrogen, total carbohydrate, protein and lipid content of *Phaeodactylum tricornutum* during growth under different photon flux densities. Under LL, $Q_N$ and $Q_C$ decreased from phase 1 to phase 2 and increased from phase 2 to phase 3 whereas under ML, $Q_N$ and $Q_C$ decreased continuously. Under HL, the decrease occurred only between phase 2 and phase 3 (panels A and B). The rate of C and N uptake were the most intense in phase 2 and very reduced in phases 1 and 3 (panels C and D). The relative amount of LPC was greatly impacted by the photon flux density. Lipids were the most abundant in phase 1 under LL whereas under ML and HL, they were barely detectable (panel E). Under LL, the relative abundance of lipids decreased during the transition from phase 1 to phase 2 and then remained constant until phase 3. This contrast with ML and HL for which the lipid proportion increased until phase 2 (ML) or phase 3 (HL) (Panel E).
however exclude that the presence of such compounds in the culture medium but then under the detection limits.

The relative amount of LPC was greatly impacted by the light intensity. For instance, in phase 1 and under LL, lipids represent more than 60% of the total cellular mass of LPC whereas under ML and HL, lipids were barely detectable at that stage of growth (Figure 3.2.E). Under LL, the relative abundance of lipids decreased during the transition from phase 1 to phase 2 and then remained constant until phase 3. This contrast with ML and HL for which the lipid proportion increased until phase 2 (ML) or phase 3 (HL) (Figure 3.2.E).

The relative abundance of carbohydrates was the highest (70%) in phase 1 under ML. It dramatically decreased during the transition to phase 2 whereas under LL and HL it did not changed by more than 8%. The relative amount of proteins was the highest (55%) under HL. Under this growth irradiance, it decreased only from phase 2 to phase 3 by circa 10% (Figure 3.2.E).

When normalized to the Chl amount, the \( Q_c/\text{Chl} \ a \) between phase 1 and phase 2 changed according to the growth light intensity: under LL, it slightly decreased, remained constant under ML and increased in HL. In phase 3, the values were similarly small for each condition (data not shown).

**Table 3.2. Quantitative and relative amounts of C and N immobilized in the cells in phase 3.** At the end of the studied period, approximately the same proportion of the initial carbon content has been consumed. The cells differ by the amount of C accumulated within the cells. The total amount of C within the cells is the highest in cells grown under ML suggesting that the conditions were the most favourable for C storage. The oxygen evolution measurements suggest that the lower level of carbon accumulation is due to an increase of the respiratory and/or photorespiration activity under LL and the HL.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>LL</th>
<th>ML</th>
<th>HL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total C amount (mg)</strong></td>
<td>197</td>
<td>167</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Relative amount of the initial C consumed (%)</strong></td>
<td>73</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total N amount (mg)</strong></td>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>2.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Relative amount of the initial N consumed (%)</strong></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.4.3 Pigment content

Chlorophyll a (Chl a), chlorophyll c (Chl c) and fucoxanthin are the major light harvesting pigments in diatoms (Jeffrey et al. 1997; Nguyen-Deroche et al. 2012). Changing growth irradiance altered the concentrations of these components. To characterize further these changes during growth, the amount of pigments were expressed relatively to the value reached in the corresponding phase 2 (Table 3.3).

Table 3.3. Impacts of growth phase and photon flux density on the relative amount of photosynthetic cells in different growth phases grown under different light intensities. Each growth phase of LL and HL has been compared to phase 2 of each light condition, separately. Generally, the proportion of pigments is the largest in phase 3.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Light intensity</th>
<th>L</th>
<th>M</th>
<th>H</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Growth phase</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total pigments</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>278</td>
<td>304</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chl a</td>
<td>126</td>
<td>271</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>98</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chl c</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>292</td>
<td>233</td>
<td>252</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carotenoids</td>
<td>112</td>
<td>612</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Cells grown under LL contained always more pigments compared to the other treatments (Figure 3.3). This result agrees with those obtained with other diatoms (P. tricornutum: Geider et al. 1985; Thalassiosira weisflogii: Post et al. 1984, 1985; Haslea ostrearia: Mouget et al. 1999).

The time-course of Chl a and carotenoids accumulations were very similar under ML and HL: both decreased during the transition between phase 1 to phase 2 and significantly increased in phase 3 (Supplemental Figure 3.2.A and C). This increase was around 271% and 343% for Chl a and 612% and 217% for carotenoids under ML and HL, respectively (Table 3.3). Under LL, the level of individual pigments increased from phase 1 to phase 3 except Chl c that decreased by 33% between phase 1 and phase 2 and then increase by 233% in phase 3 (Table 3.3 and Supplemental Figure 3.2). During phase 1 and phase 3, Chl c content was higher under LL than under ML or HL (Supplemental Figure 3.2.B).

The variation of the Chl a/Chl c ratio is used as a proxy of the size of the light harvesting antenna complex (Lamote et al. 2003; Nguyen-Deroche et al. 2012). It varied in opposite under LL and ML/HL, respectively. Under LL, the ratio increased from phase 1 to phase 2 and then decreased until phase 3 (Supplemental Figure 3.2.D). At the end of
phase 3 the ratio was similar for all conditions. Interestingly, carotenoids mostly followed the Chl a/Chl c ratio except during phase 2 to phase 3 transition under LL (Supplemental Figure 3.2.D).

![Figure 3.3. Total pigments in Phaeodactylum tricornutum grown under different light intensities. The content in Chl a, Chl c and fucoxanthin is altered by growth irradiance. Under LL, diatom cells contained always more pigments than under other light intensities. Under ML and HL, Chl a and fucoxanthin decreased during the transition between phase 1 to phase 2 and significantly increased in phase 3. Data are mean values ± SE (n = 3) and error bars represent SD. Means followed by asterisks are significantly different from the corresponding value in ML (p < 0.05).](image)

### 3.4.4 Photosynthetic and respiratory activities

The photosynthetic activity was measured as the capacity of the algae to emit oxygen under an illumination. Because the value of the compensation point increased with the photon flux density (Supplemental Table 3.5), we concluded that the respiration activity (Rₐ) is impacted by the light intensity (see Figure 3.4.B). Consequently, Rₐ was measured in the dark immediately after each measurement of photosynthesis.

Net photosynthesis (Aₘₐₓ) expressed relatively to the cell number (Figure 3.3.A) or to the Chl a amount (Supplemental Figure 3.2.A) present the same trends. Regardless the growth phase, the net oxygen emission was significantly higher under ML and HL than under LL.

As shown earlier, Rₐ was impacted by the growth irradiance: it was higher under ML and HL than under LL except during phase 3 (Figure 3.4.B and Supplemental Figure
3.3.B). However, when taken individually, neither $R_d$ nor $A_{\text{max}}$ were significantly affected by the irradiance value during phase 1 and phase 2. The view is less clear in phase 3: under ML and HL both activities were reduced suggesting a strong reduction of the metabolic activities (Figure 3.4 and Supplemental Figure 3.3).

![Figure 3.4](image)

**Figure 3.4.** Net photosynthesis ($A_{\text{max}}$) and respiration ($R_d$) activities in *Phaeodactylum tricornutum* grown under different light intensities. $A_{\text{max}}$ and $R_d$ were significantly higher under ML and HL than under LL. However, their values did not change along the growth at any of the grown photon flux densities. Under LL, $A_{\text{max}}$ was reduced while respiration was high, staying however below. Values represent the mean ± SE ($n = 3$) and error bars represent SD. Means followed by different letters and asterisks are significantly different in each light intensity and each growth phase, respectively ($p < 0.05$).

Under LL, $R_d$ increased, staying however under $A_{\text{max}}$ value when related to the cell amount (Figure 3.4.B). Due to the change of Chl $a$ occurring in phase 3, an inverse relationship was found when $R_d$ and $A_{\text{max}}$ were related to the Chl $a$ amount (Supplemental Figure 3.3.B).
3.4.5 Photochemical and non-photochemical quenching analysis

To determine whether the modifications in the pigment content reported above were affecting the management of the incoming energy, the variations of the Chl a fluorescence yield were recorded during an actinic illumination equal to the growth irradiance. Typical recording are presented in Supplemental Figure 3.4. Figure 3.5 compares the variations of photochemical and non-photochemical processes using characteristic parameters (photochemical: \( \Phi P_0, \Phi II, qP, 1-qP \); non-photochemical: \( q_0, qN \)) during growth under the different light intensities. The meaning of the parameters and the equations used for calculations are presented in Supplemental Table 3.4. The maximum quantum yield of photosystem II (PSII) photochemistry (\( \Phi P_0 \)) in cells grown under different light condition and different growth phases was constant (almost 0.6) (Figure 3.5), being consistent with that previously reported in *P. tricornutum* (Bertrand et al. 2001; Roháček et al. 2014) for non stressed diatoms, suggesting that cells were healthy. This result contrasts with the effective quantum yield of photochemical energy conversion in PSII, which progressively reduced from LL to HL. When compared to ML, \( \Phi II \) was higher about 60, 53 and 125% (phase 1, 2 and 3, respectively) in cells grown under LL.

![Figure 3.5](image)

*Figure 3.5. Variations of fluorescence kinetic parameters of Phaeodactylum tricornutum grown under different light intensities and during different growth phases.* The maximum quantum yield of PSII photochemistry (\( \Phi P_0 \)) in cells grown under different light condition and different growth phases was constant (almost 0.6), suggesting that cells were healthy. This result contrasts with the effective quantum yield of photochemical energy conversion in PSII, which progressively reduced from LL to HL. The photochemical quenching (\( qP \)) that quantifies the actual fraction of PSII reaction centers staying open during the illumination. \( qP \) values decreased as the light intensity increased in an antiparallel manner with 1-\( qP \), that quantifies the fraction of closed reaction centers. The non-photochemical quenching parameters \( qN \) and \( q0 \) reflect the excess radiation converted to heat during the actinic radiation. Under LL, \( qN \) and \( q0 \) are close to zero, indicating that under this lighting condition, there was no excess of absorbed energy. The intensity of these parameters was higher under ML and HL, suggesting that under these photon flux densities, part of the incoming energy needed to be dissipated as heat.
The photochemical quenching (qP) quantifies the actual fraction of PSII reaction centers staying open under either light intensity (Roháček et al. 2008). No significant change of qP was observed during different growth phases under either light intensity showing that diatoms were well adapted to the growth conditions. However, the qP values decreased as the light intensity increased. Under HL, qP values were approximately 50% of the values under LL (Figure 3.5).

The values of 1-qP, that quantifies the fraction of closed reaction centers varied accordingly (Figure 3.5). The absorption of an excess of photon triggers mechanisms of energy dissipation as heat (Roháček et al. 2008; Roháček, 2010; Stirbet et al. 2014). These mechanisms are collectively referred to as the non-photochemical quenching (NPQ or qN) because they are lowering the Chl fluorescence yield (Roháček et al. 2008; Roháček, 2010; Stirbet et al. 2014).

The related parameters qN and q0 reflect the excess radiation converted to heat during the actinic radiation. According to the figure 3.5, these parameters increased with increasing the light intensity. Under LL, they were close to zero, indicating that under this lighting condition, there was no excess of absorbed energy. This was not the case when cells were growing under ML and HL. To decipher the mechanisms contributing to the dissipation of the excess of energy, the kinetic of the relaxation of the non-photochemical quenching was recorded according to Roháček et al. (2014). When adapted to the light conditions (Fs phase) cells were placed in the dark, non-photochemical quenching gradually relaxed (Supplemental Figure 3.4). The mathematical analyses could only be performed on the relaxation kinetics recorded with samples illuminated with actinic light equal to ML or HL.

In agreement with Roháček et al. (2014) three individual components were found in both cases (data not shown). The mathematical analyses revealed that regardless the growth phase and the growth light the less intense component was qNf while the most intense component was qNi (for a detailed explanation of the meaning of these components, see the discussion and the Supplemental Figure 3.4). The amplitude of qNf remains at the basic levels except in phase 3 under ML. The intensity of qNi and qNs were always larger in cells grown under HL than in cell grown under ML whereas the intensity of qNf was always larger in cell grown under ML than under HL, except in phase 2 in which the values were not significantly different one from each other. The proportion of qNi increased from phase 1 to phase 3 (Figure 3.6). qNs was the second mostly intense components. Its amplitude slightly decreased from phase 1 to phase 3 under HL while it remained constant under ML.
3.4.6 In silico reconstruction of Phaeodactylum tricornutum central carbon metabolism

3.4.6.1. Central metabolism

To retrieve the set of genes putatively encoding the biosynthetic key enzymes involved in central carbon metabolism of *P. tricornutum*, DiatomCyc, JGI, BLAST and Kroth et al. (2008) data were mined. The key enzymes distributed among the different compartments and their related gene/isogene(s) and primers are listed in the Supplemental Table 3.6. To get a clear view on central carbon metabolism pathways, a simplified overview of the most important metabolites and reactions between pathways is briefly described in Supplemental Figure 3.7. More details of each pathway with the number of isoforms for each enzyme are shown in Figure 3.7.

The Calvin–Benson cycle plays a central role in the global carbon cycle: CO₂ is assimilated by RubisCo and processed into triose phosphate (TP) including glyceraldehyde 3phosphate (GAP) and dihydroxyacetone phosphate (DHAP) that occur as intermediate in several central metabolic pathways (Kroth et al. 2008; Obata et al. 2013). Kroth et al. (2008) have identified various Calvin–Benson cycle enzymes in up to five isoforms, distributed between plastids, mitochondria and cytosol. Although most of the Calvin–Benson cycle enzymes in diatoms are very similar to those of land plants, they might be differently regulated by light (Wilhelm et al. 2006). RubisCo is an enzyme
Figure 3.7. Cellular pathways and processes of central carbon metabolism in *Phaeodactylum tricornutum*. All red depicted enzymes are the key enzymes and their related gene/isogenes are listed beside.

**Abbreviations:** RUBP: D-ribulose-1,5-bisphosphate; 3PG: 3-phospho-D-glycerate; BPG: 1,3-diphosphoglycerate; GAP: D-glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate; DHAP: dihydroxyacetone phosphate; FBAC: chloroplastic fructose-1,6-bisphosphate aldolase; FBP: fructose-1,6-bisphosphate; F6P: D-fructose-6-phosphate; X5P: D-xylulose-5-phosphate; Ru5P: D-ribulose-5-phosphate; SBP: D-sedoheptulose-1,7-bisphosphate; S7P: D-sedoheptulose-7-phosphate; R5P: D-ribose-5-phosphate; E4P: D-erythrose-4-phosphate; 2PGL: 2-phosphoglycolate; 2PG: 2-phosphoglycerate; PEP: phosphoenolpyruvate; OAA: oxaloacetate; A-CoA: acetyl-CoA; G1P: D-glucose 1-phosphate; G6P: D-glucose-6-phosphate; GNL6P: D-glucono-Δ-lactone-6-phosphate; 6PGN: 6-phospho-D-gluconate; PPS: periplasmic space; ER: endoplasmic reticulum (chloroplastic); ACC1, ACC2: Acetyl-CoA-carboxylase; PDH1, PDHA1, PDHB: pyruvate dehydrogenase E1; BGS1: glycosyl transferase
composed of eight large \((rbcL)\) and eight small subunits \((rbcS)\) (Joshi et al. 2015). When \(O_2\) out-competes \(CO_2\) for binding acceptor ribulose D-ribulose-1,5-bisphosphate \((RuBP)\), photorespiration occurs, leading to the formation of a two carbon molecules, 2-phosphoglycolate \((2PGL)\), the first product of oxygenation reaction by Rubisco (Nishimura et al. 2008), known to inhibit the Calvin–Benson cycle enzyme triosephosphate isomerase \((TPI)\) (Husic et al. 1987) (Figure 3.7). 2PGL is then dephosphorylated to glycolate by 2-phosphoglycolate phosphatase \((PGP)\).

Although a large fraction of the produced glycolate is released by marine phytoplankton into the water body, resulting in carbon loss (Leboulanger et al. 1997), the remaining portion of the chloroplastic glycolate pool is recyled through photorespiratory pathway (Parker & Armburst, 2004). In diatoms, photorespiration utilizes enzymes present in the plastid, mitochondria and also peroxisome (Kroth et al. 2008; Figure 3.7). In addition to glycolate shunt from chloroplast to peroxisome to form glyoxylate in a reaction catalyzed by a glycolate-oxidising enzyme \((GOX)\) (more probably a dehydrogenase than an oxidase), glycolate is also exported into mitochondria where the formation of glyoxylate is followed by transamination to produce glycine. Alternatively, glyoxylate can be directly exported from peroxisome to mitochondria where it is transformed to glycine. To summarize, photorespiration results in a succession of organic compounds including glycolate, glycine, and serine (see Figure 3.7). Serine is further metabolized to glycerate. Generally, but not in diatoms, glycerate may then enter the Calvin–Benson cycle in the chloroplast after phosphorylation by glycerate kinase \((GK)\). So far, no evidence for a gene coding a chloroplastic \(GK\) was identified in the genome of \(P. tricornutum\) or in \(T. pseudonana\) (Kroth et al. 2008; Fabris et al. 2012). Nevertheless, a gene encoding a mitochondrial \(GK\) has been identified in \(P. tricornutum\) by Fabris et al. (2012). Smith et al. (2012) suggested that if a mitochondrial \(GK\) exists, the photorespiration by-product could then directly enter mitochondrial glycolysis and the tricarboxylic acid \((TCA)\) cycle and be used to either drive energy generation or to replenish TCA cycle intermediates (not presented in Figure 3.7). Another hypothesis claims that all the glycine and serine may be shunted to other pathways such as the formation of the antioxidant glutathione (Raven & Beardall, 1981; Kroth et al. 2008). In contrast, Matsuda & Kroth (2014) have reported the photorespiration is the major pathway to recycle 2PGL in diatoms to produce glycine and serine, suggesting that photorespiration might not be involved in recycling of 3PG. The fate of glycerate and more generally the role of the photorespiration remain open questions in diatoms.

Glycolysis is an energy generating pathway (Smith et al. 2012) that is closely linked to the other carbon metabolic pathways (Figure 3.7). Glycolysis pathway is divided into two main phases with an ATP consuming upper part (first phase) from glucokinase \((GLK)\) to triose phosphate isomerase \((TPI)\) and an ATP producing lower part (second phase) from glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate dehydrogenase \((GAPDH)\) to pyruvate kinase
Glucose produced by degradation of chrysolaminarin is metabolized via glycolysis to provide the cell with energy (ATP and NADH) as well as the metabolic intermediates required to supply either the TCA cycle or fatty acid biosynthesis (Obata et al. 2013). Investigating the genome of *Thalassiosira pseudonana* allowed to identify genes coding enzymes for the complete cytosolic glycolysis (Armbrust et al. 2004) and analysis of the genome of *P. tricornutum* suggested that this pathway, is duplicated in diatom plastids (Kroth et al. 2008). On the basis of *in silico* analyses, Kroth et al. (2008) predicted the additional location of isozymes corresponding to the complete lower half of glycolysis (GAPDH, TPI to PK) in the mitochondria. Of the six identified GAPDH genes in *P. tricornutum*, GAPC4 and the fusion protein TPI/GAPC3 are predicted to be targeted in the mitochondria (Liaud et al. 2000; Kroth et al. 2008; Chauton et al. 2013). Other GAPC genes encode enzymes localized in the cytosol and in the chloroplasts (Gruber et al. 2009; Liaud et al. 2000). Most of the enzymes involved in these pathways can function bi-directionally. The direction of the flux of the pathways tends to be regulated by mass action, allostery, or post-translational modification(s) (Smith et al. 2012).

It is worth mentioning that in *P. tricornutum*, Fabris et al. (2012) highlighted the presence of a functional Entner-Doudoroff pathway (EDP), which converts glucose-6-phosphate (G6P) to pyruvate and GAP in the mitochondria (not shown in Figure 3.7). The role of the EDP may be to feed TCA cycle with pyruvate early after the transition from dark to light *i.e.* when pyruvate production through the “classic” glycolytic pathway is weak, resulting in a deficiency of ATP generation (Shtaida et al. 2015) that could not be compensated by photosynthesis that is resuming (for more details see Fabris et al. 2012; Chauton et al. 2013).

### 3.4.6.2 CO₂ supply

In addition to inorganic carbon acquisition through CO₂ diffusion, the majority of microalgae aid RubisCo to capture efficiently CO₂ by activating carbon concentration mechanisms (CCMs). Two types of CCM have been described.

The first type is known as the biochemical CCM. It involves the fixation of HCO₃⁻ into C₄ compounds in the manner of C₄ plants (Roberts et al. 2007; Matsuda et al. 2011; Nakajima et al. 2013). However, and in contrast with C₄ plants, *in silico* analyses of the subcellular localization of the relevant enzymes predicted a scrambled C₄ metabolism. Phosphoenolpyruvate carboxylase 1 (PEPC1) is predicted to be targeted either in the endoplasmic reticulum (ER) (chloroplastic ER) or in the periplasmic space (PPS) between the second and third membranes of the four plastid membrane of diatom (for a detailed description of the chloroplast envelops in diatoms, see Solymosi, 2012). PEPC2, PEP carboxykinase (PEPCK), malate dehydrogenase (MDH), malic enzyme (ME) and pyruvate carboxylase (PYC1) are all predicted to be localized in the mitochondria,
whereas pyruvate phosphate dikinase (PPDK) and PYC2 are predicted to be plastid-targeted (Figure 3.7) (Kroth et al. 2008; Chauton et al. 2013; Haimovich-Dayan et al. 2013).

The second mechanism of CCM is denoted as the biophysical CCM. This mechanism involves the transport of CO₂ and HCO₃⁻ as inorganic forms by transporters located in the plasma membrane and chloroplasts envelopes (SLVs) and carbonic anhydrases (CAs). There are numerous carbonic anhydrases (CAs) within the matrix of the layered plastidic membranes, strongly suggesting large interconversion activity between CO₂ and HCO₃⁻ within the chloroplast envelope (Matsuda & Kroth, 2014). The alkaline stromal pH is very important for the conversion between CO₂ and HCO₃⁻ (Figure 3.7) (Wang et al. 2011). HCO₃⁻ enters the thylakoid lumen through an anion channel (still controversial) by the light-powered proton pump, which generates both an electrical potential difference and a pH difference across the thylakoid membrane (Raven et al. 2014).

The pyrenoid is a crystalline proteinaceous undefined cellular micro-compartment that may play an important role in CCMs. These structures are in the chloroplast in which most of the RubisCo are located, and it is here that CO₂ is concentrated around RubisCo (Moroney & Ynalvez, 2007; Matsuda & Kroth, 2014). It has been reported that thylakoid and pyrenoid are closely associated to each other and form a so-called thylakoid-pyrenoid complex allowing the enzyme to operate at a higher efficiency than when dispersed throughout the chloroplast. Carbonic anhydrases accelerate the equilibration of HCO₃⁻ and CO₂. CA3 has been reported to be active in the chloroplast endoplasmic reticulum (CER) (Samukawa et al. 2014) and in the thylakoid-pyrenoid complex. Pyrenoid also contains bCA4 and bCA5 (for more details see Raven et al. 2014). Although, the presence of a pyrenoid does not necessarily mean that the cells possess a CCM (Ratti et al. 2007; Genkov et al. 2010), there is the possibility that the pyrenoid functions as a focal point of the CCM, especially with the presence of bCA4 and bCA5 (Figure 3.7) (for more details see Matsuda & Kroth, 2014; Samukawa et al. 2014; Holtz et al. 2015).

In addition to CAs involved in the biophysical CCM, there are several HCO₃⁻ transporters acting in CO₂ acquisition in diatom forming the SLV family of transporters. Within the 10 SLV families identified in P. tricornutum, 7 genes, forming the SLV4 family, were found to encode bicarbonate, CO₃²⁻ or HCO₃⁻ transporters across membranes (Romero et al. 2004; Nakajima et al. 2013). In the study performed by Chauton et al. (2013), SLV4 transporters were strongly down-regulated at dark. While Reinfelder et al. (2000) reported higher transcriptional activity late in the day and during the night in SLV4 and putative CA1 and CA2. In addition to participate in CCM, plastidic bicarbonate transporters play an important role in excess light energy dissipation by consuming ATP for a carbon cycling through a fast efflux of CO₂ across the plasmalemma (Tchernov et al. 2003).
3.4.6.3 The fate of photosynthetically fixed CO₂

Under stress or unfavorable environmental conditions, many algal species produce substantial amounts of neutral lipids (20-50% dry cell weight), mainly in the form of triacylglycerols (TAGs) that serve as a storage form of carbon and energy for cell (Hu et al. 2008; Lemoine & Schoefs, 2010; Sharma et al. 2012; Mimouni et al. 2012; Heydarizadeh et al. 2013; Nogueira et al. 2015). The accumulation of fatty acids requires the continuous provision of acetyl-CoA (A-CoA) as an essential precursor for fatty acid synthesis as well as a sufficient supply of NAD(P)H in the cytosol, that primarily is produced by malic enzyme (ME). This enzyme has a key role in the regulation of lipid accumulation process in oleaginous microorganisms (Liang & Jiang, 2015). Overexpression or down-expression of ME can increase or decrease lipid content, respectively, inside the cell (Kendrick & Ratledge, 1992; Li et al. 2013).

GAPDH is an important enzyme for lipid biosynthesis that converts D-glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate (GAP) (formed from dihydroxyacetone phosphate (DHAP)) to bisphosphate glycerate (BPG) through glycolytic pathway (Figure 3.7). Overexpression of this enzyme can promote the conversion of DHAP to GAP, resulting in an increase of neutral lipid content (Yao et al. 2014).

Diatoms, like other autotrophs, synthesize a whole range of amino acids, including aromatic amino acids. Tryptophane, phenylalanine and tyrosine serve also as precursors of other aromatic compounds such as such as phenylpropanoids and flavonoids (Rico et al. 2013). The synthesis of aromatic compounds starts with chorismate biosynthesis in the shikimate pathway. It is the only known biosynthetic route for synthesis of aromatic compounds. The carbon skeletons of amino acids are derived from central carbon metabolism, including the major photosynthetic pathways (light-dependent reactions and the Calvin cycle) and other associated pathways e.g. glycolysis (pyruvate as an important intermediate for amino acid synthesis and phosphoenolpyruvate (PEP) as a precursor for aromatic amino acid synthesis, oxidative pentose phosphate pathway, photorespiration and TCA cycle (for more details see Bromke, 2013).

3.4.7 Changes in selected gene expression during growth

Enzyme localization and diel gene expression pattern are important to understand the role(s) of different enzyme/isoenzymes, including gene compensation mechanisms, in the physiological response of diatoms (Chauton et al. 2013). To reach this goal, 74 genes coding 33 enzymes involved in the central carbon metabolism were studied. A global view (heatmap) of the changes in the expression of the 74 genes of P. tricornutum
based on growth phases (Supplemental Figure 3.8) under the three light intensities. Out of the 74 genes, only 34 showed a particular profile with respect to growth phase and/or light levels (Figures 3.8 and 3.9). The analysis revealed that for several genes, the mRNA expression pattern was similar regardless the light condition with respect to the growth of the culture with a particularly high up-regulation of PEPCK, FbaC5 and PPDK and a down-regulation for others (PGP, GOX2, PYC2, GAPC1, PK2, CA7 and TPI_2) (Figure 3.8 and Supplemental Figure 3.8). To emphasize gene expression variations and find out the strong patterns in our complex data set, principle component analysis (PCA) was performed (Figure 3.9). The two first components (61% of explained variance on the data) were selected as the most representative principal components according to their discriminative power and resulted in clear separation of the three different light conditions and growth phases (Figure 3.9). In the score plots, expression of genes under LL completely separated from those under ML and HL while the expression level under ML was more similar to that of HL than LL grown cells (Figure 3.9). Indeed, four groups (circles) of correlated parameters ($p<0.05$, Pearson’s test) appeared according to their location relative to the 2 first axes of the PCA (Figure 3.9).

Figure 3.8. mRNA profiles of genes either up- or down-regulated during three growth phases under three light conditions. In all conditions phase 1 of each light is used as calibrator.
Figure 3.9. A) PCA labeling of differentially up- or down-regulated genes under different light intensities defined as group inside ovals, green: low light (LL), violet: medium (ML) and high light (HL); B) Projection of the samples (3 replicates per condition) on the 2 first axis (62% of the variance explained by the 2 first axis); C) log2 mRNA expression ratios in the 3 conditions over growth phases using phase 1 as calibrator.
The analysis revealed that under LL, genes located at the top of the PCA (green circle group) were particularly down-regulated during the growth of the culture as shown in panel A (Figure 3.9). It includes the genes encoding: (1) the HCO$_3^-$ transporters SLV4_1 and SLV4_3 involved in the biophysical CCM (up to 10 and 3 fold the expression of this gene in phase 1, respectively); (2) the plastidic rbcL and rbcS encoding two subunits of the RubisCo from the Calvin cycle, particularly in phase 3 (respectively 22 and 11 fold the expression of phase 1); and (3) most of the genes (GPI_3, PK1, PK5, and Fba3) coding enzymes of glycolysis in the three cell compartments in which glycolysis occurs (Figure 3.9). Still under LL, the genes found at the bottom of the PCA encoding the two carbonic anhydrases (bCA4 and bCA5) were highly up-regulated in phase 3 (10 and 3.5 fold the expression of these genes in phase 1), and to a lesser extend the genes encoding PGAM3 and GDCH (3 and 4 fold respectively in phase 2 compare to phase 1) (Figure 3.9).

The group found on the left of the factorial map (violet circle) was composed of genes that were significantly up-regulated during the growth of the culture for ML and HL. It included particularly the genes encoding PYC1, Fba4, GDCT, GPI_1, GAPDH and FBPC4 (Figure 3.9). The group found on the right of the factorial map (violet circle) was composed of genes that were significantly down-regulated in phase 2 and/or phase 3 compared to phase 1 (Figure 3.9). It included the genes encoding: (1) the single mitochondrial GAPC4 involved in glycolysis, reaching for ML (45 and 200 fold respectively in phase 2 and 3 the expression of this gene in phase 1) and HL (45 and 240 fold respectively); (2) FBP and PK4 both involved in the cytosolic glycolysis; and (3) ME1 under ML.

3.4.7.1 Light intensity influenced expression of genes in different growth phases

To determine how gene expression can be regulated under different light intensities mRNA levels in the three growth phases under LL and HL were compared to that reached under ML (Figure 3.10). The differences in mRNA levels between LL and ML were the strongest in phase 1 and 3, whilst they did not differ sharply under HL (compared to ML). Also, in phase 2, mostly down-expression of genes was observed in different pathways in both LL and HL, except some slight increase of expression in some genes (Figure 3.10). LL stimulated the expression of mitochondrial genes encoding PYC1 and PEPCK from biochemical CCM (12 and 67 fold, respectively), more than ML in phase 1, whilst these genes were down expressed almost 4 and 2 fold, respectively, under HL, and their expression decreased during phase 2 and 3 in both LL and HL (Figure 3.10). During phase 2, genes coding enzymes of the biophysical CCM were downexpressed with some exceptions, including CA7 and CA1 under LL and HL (compared to ML).
Putative bCA4 and bCA5 were highly expressed (32 and 8 fold, respectively) during phase 3 under LL while some genes slightly up-expressed (mostly 4 fold in CA1) under HL. Among the 14 studied genes involved in the Calvin–Benson cycle under LL, 11 genes were over expressed in phase 1, mostly plastidic FbaC5 (7 fold) (Figure 3.8). Under HL a slight higher expression of two genes, FbaC1 (2 fold) and FbaC5 (3 fold) was observed.

Figure 3.10. Dysregulated heatmap showing the expression pattern of 74 genes related to carbon metabolic pathways, with the greatest differences in expression (red: high, green: low). Columns represent three growth phases under low light (LL) and high light (HL). In each growth phase ML is used as calibrator.
Thereafter their regulation did not change strongly in phase 2 compared to ML but decreased drastically for some genes in phase 3 under LL especially for plastidic rbcS and rbcL (13 and 25 fold, respectively), and increased in FbaC5 and TPI_1 (7 and 5 fold, respectively) compared to ML and HL. Interestingly, modifications in the photorespiration were observed during phase 2 to phase 3 transition under LL: the mitochondrial GDCP was down-expressed (8 fold) followed by up-regulation of this gene (8 fold) in phase 3. These changes were accompanied by the overexpression of GOX2 and PGP (7 and 6 fold, respectively). In general, the expression of genes in photorespiration was higher under LL than under ML and LL, especially in phase 3.

Out of the 10 cytosolic studied genes in glycolysis, seven were expressed higher under LL phase 1, mostly Fba4 (9 fold), PK3 and GAPDH (both 6 fold), than under ML (Figure 3.10). The expression of these three genes decreased, especially Fba4 in phase 3 (4 fold). Potentially GAPC1 had the highest expression in phase 3 under LL, around 60 fold more than under ML, while in phase 1 and 2 did not show significant differential expression compared to ML. No sharp modifications in the expression of genes coding enzymes involved in glycolysis under HL, compared to ML and it was the same for expression of genes in shikimate pathway, under LL and HL.

3.5 Discussion

Diatoms adapt to changing light intensities in a very efficient way (Wagner et al. 2006) and the molecular mechanisms involved in regulating diatom light responses are so far not completely elucidated (Bailleul et al. 2010). In this study, we have compared the impacts of three photon flux densities on *P. tricornutum* using physiological, biochemical and molecular tools with the aim how the partitioning of carbon among its potential sinks is impacted.

3.5.1 Growth

The effects of environmental factors on cell development, physiology and regulation mechanisms depend on cell status (Jia et al. 2015). Therefore, a careful study on the effects of growth light intensity requires comparing cells from cells at the similar developmental stages. To fulfill this requirement, the actual growth rate was calculated and the samples were prepared when the actual growth rate was at either maximum or minimum. The comparison of growth rate ‘µ’ and generation time ‘G’ values revealed that under LL, the mitosis frequency was circa three times lower than under ML or HL (Table 3.1), suggesting under LL, the low abundance of photons constituted a limiting factor for growth of *P. tricornutum*. The values reported in Table 3.1 are lower than those reported by Geider et al. (1985) for *P. tricornutum* grown under the same nominal irradiances. These differences arise probably from the difference of light sensor used for
measurements (Geider et al. (1985) used a planar (2π) sensor whereas a spheric (4π) was used in this study). It is well established that the nominal irradiance measured with spheric sensor is higher than with planar ones. Both studies however agree on the fact that increasing the irradiance from 30 to 300 μmol m⁻² s⁻¹ increased growth rate (Table 3.1). However, HL intensity did not promote growth rate suggesting that under HL, the additional energy was not used to promote growth. Altogether, these results agreed with those already published on this topic (Beardall & Morris, 1976; Bailleul et al. 2010; Marchetti et al. 2012; Xiang et al. 2015).

Among nutrient elements, C and N, above all else, are absolutely required for growth and the synthesis of biomolecules. The total C consumed by the culture was high (over 70%) whereas the total N decreased only by 10%. Therefore, one can assume that the reduction of C availability is mostly responsible for the stationary phase. In this work, we found that the variation of C and N uptake between phase 1 and phase 2 uptake followed the rule observed by Marchetti et al. (2012) with Isochrysis affinis galbana i.e. uptake decreases when growth rate increases but this was not true during the transition between phase 2 and phase 3, suggesting that other factors are involved in the control of the transition to the stationary phase.

The photosynthetically fixed C is mostly used to synthesize lipids, proteins and carbohydrates. Interestingly, under each lighting condition, the major compound was different in phase 1: under HL, the most abundant type of compound was proteins whereas under ML and LL, it was lipids and carbohydrates, respectively. To explain this result, it is enough to realize that growth conditions under LL, phase 1, recall some conditions favoring lipid accumulation in diatoms: elevated amount of available C and reduced cell division rate (Nogueira et al. 2015). Under ML and HL, the division rate increased rapidly after the start of the culture. To sustain this growth, most of the C was incorporated into simple carbohydrates that are used to generate the ATP needed to sustain the growth rate. Lipids started to accumulate in phase 2 and phase 3 but the accumulation was limited because of the progressive lack of C in the growth medium. The importance of high biomass production rate in enhancing algal lipid production was reported by Sukenik (1991). A positive correlation between lipid production (polyunsaturated fatty acids (PUFAs)) and cell concentration in P. tricornutum has also been observed by Yongmanitchai & Ward (1991). However, other studies have reported the decrease of total lipid production by the increase of light intensity and increase of algal growth rate (Terry et al. 1983; Spectorova et al. 1986; Sukenik et al. 1989; Tedesco & Duerr, 1989; Harrison et al. 1990; Thompson et al. 1990; Renaud et al. 1991). Consequently, increasing algal productivity by increasing irradiance might reduce the algal lipid productivity. Recently, in the study performed by Nogueira et al. (2015) in P. tricornutum, an increase of TAG content was observed by increasing the irradiance values (50, 300 and 600 μmol m⁻² s⁻¹).
Analysis of central carbon metabolism transcript levels first highlighted genes coding for enzymes that may have important flux roles regardless of light intensity conditions. First of all, no particular regulation of the genes coding the subunits of the RubisCo was observed except under LL for which a reduction was observed along growth. This confirms earlier reports on higher plants and phytoplankton communities showing that carbon fixation is regulated at early stage of development by transcriptional control of RubisCo synthesis and at the later phase at other biochemical levels (Loza-Tavera et al. 1990; Pichard et al. 1996). Besides, the expression of several genes coding for enzymes of the Calvin–Benson cycle were affected by the growth conditions. During phase 1 to phase 2 transitions, the rate of cell division increased and the reconstitution of daughter cells need of building blocks was very high. Because those are mostly made from photosynthetically fixed carbon, one should expect FbaC5 gene to be up-regulated in all three conditions, especially in the phase 2 (Figure 3.8). The localization of FbaC5 in the pyrenoid of P. tricornutum is indicative of a linkage between some components of the Calvin–Benson cycle and the CCM (Tachibana et al. 2011). In the vascular plant Arabidopsis thaliana, FBA is one of the three Calvin–Benson cycle enzymes that was most sensitive to biological perturbations and found to have an important rate-limiting role in regulating the carbon assimilation flux of the Calvin–Benson cycle (Sun et al. 2003). This is presumably what is happening in our cultures in the phase 2 during which photosynthesis is particularly active (Figure 3.4).

Regardless the irradiance intensity, the FbaC5 gene expression fell from phase 2 to phase 3 but remained much higher than in phase 1 (Figure 3.8). The up-regulation of FbaC5 is accompanied by a significant down-regulation of TPI_2 and GAPC1 both involved in the reverse reaction that produce back trioses (Allen et al. 2012). Altogether, this change in gene expression could be interpreted as a lack of DHAP formation in the Calvin cycle. To feed the putative sink in DHAP created by the overexpression of FbaC5, one can postulate an import of this component from the cytosol using triose phosphate translocator (TPT) (Batz et al. 1992; Heber, 1974). This DHAP would be transformed in Ru5P through the non-oxidative pentose-phosphate pathway or the Calvin–Benson cycle (Figure 3.7).

Up-regulation of FBPC2 and FBPC4 genes under ML and HL, phase 3 suggests the use of the Calvin–Benson cycle (for C5 regeneration) along the growth of the cultures (Supplemental Figure 3.8). The Ru5P can then serve as substrate for RubisCo for binding CO₂. In case of CO₂ shortage e.g. during the transition from phase 2 to phase 3, Ru5P could be exported to the cytosol (Heber, 1974) and metabolized through the oxidative pentose phosphate pathway after isomerisation to X5P (Figure 3.7). The increase in the expression of the gene coding cytosolic PGDH, the last enzyme of this pathway agreed with this reasoning (Supplemental Figure 3.8). The resulting Ru5P would be reimported in the chloroplast stroma (Matsuda & Kroth, 2014) through the X5P/phosphate translocator (Facchinelli & Weber, 2011) to maintain/restore the
chloroplastic pool of this compound. Importantly, the reaction from 6-phospho-D-gluconate (6PGN) to Ru5P catalyze by PGDH, generates CO₂ that can potentially increase the CO₂ concentration in PPS. Thus, the fixed CO₂ is mostly used to form 3PG that is then transformed to 2PG. If we hypothesize that the flux of C is directed to the formation of 2PG, then one should expect that the genes coding for the enzyme catalyzing the transformation of 3PG to 2PG (PGAM) are up-regulated. This was indeed the case for PGAM3 in phase 2 (> 2 fold) under the three light intensities (Supplemental Figure 3.8).

2PG is the substrate of enolase to form PEP, that, in turn, serves as a precursor of the Shikimate pathway or to produce pyruvate (Figure 3.7). The enzyme coding PPDK, the enzyme converting pyruvate into PEP, was one of the highest up-regulated genes in phase 3 (13, 84 and 229 fold) under LL, ML and HL, respectively (Supplemental Figure 3.8). This result, with the mostly down expression of PK genes, strongly suggested that PEP was mainly oriented toward the Shikimate pathway i.e. the formation of aromatic amino acids and derivatives. These aromatic compounds are unlikely used in protein synthesis as the protein amount in cells grown in HL is not significantly modified during growth. This contrast with the LL and ML conditions in which protein amount increased (Figure 3.2). Alternatively, PEP serves as acceptor for CO₂/HCO₃⁻ fixation by PEPC in the C₄ route (Figure 3.7). The enzymes PEPC1 and PEPC2 are localized in the chloroplast (PPS) and mitochondria, respectively. The expression of PEPC1 and PEPC2 did not varied significantly as already observed by Mc-Ginn & Morel (2008) and Valenzuela et al. (2012) in P. tricornutum under low CO₂ conditions. In mitochondria, OAA formation occurs through the carboxylation of PEP or pyruvate by PEPC2 and PYC1, respectively (Figure 3.7). The much higher over-expression of PYC1 than PEPC2 suggested that HCO₃⁻ was preferentially fixed through the latter enzyme. This conclusion is in line with the suggestion by Valuenzela et al. (2012). In addition, Chauton et al. (2013) have proposed that activation of PEP and pyruvate carboxylations are more involved in the dissipation of excess light energy and pH homeostasis than to the CCM. In our conditions, this was however unlikely because non-photochemical quenching measurements suggested that the capacity to dissipate the excess absorbed light energy was far to be exhausted (Figure 3.6). Instead, we prefer to favor the hypothesis according to which CCM was progressively activated to supply the cell with C. However, we cannot exclude that both roles occurred simultaneously. This conclusion reinforces the proposal by Roberts et al. (2007) and Reinfelder (2011) on this regulation aspect.

It is well recognized that O₂ and CO₂ are in competition for RubisCo active site. When the gas partial pressure in the surrounding of RubisCo is in favor of O₂, RuBP enters in the photo-respiration pathway of which the first step consists in the oxidation of RuBP to 2PGL by RubisCo (Figure 3.7) (Beardall, 1989; Spreitzer, 1999; Ogren & Bowes, 1971; Sage & Stata, 2015). This pathway was found to be down-regulated in this study. The gene coding PGP, the enzyme catalyzing the formation of glycolate from 2PGL was down-regulated in LL, ML and HL in phases 2 and 3 compared to phase 1 (Supplemental
These changes were accompanied by the down-regulation of the expression of two other photorespiratory genes coding the mitochondrial GOX2 (3, 17 and 17 in phase 3 for LL, ML and HL, respectively) and GDCP (3, 12 and 7 for LL, ML and HL, respectively) (Supplemental Figure 3.8). Beside its role in diverting carbon atoms, photorespiration plays a critical role in nitrogen metabolism in diatom cell and a role in excess energy dissipation under stress conditions (Parker & Armbrust, 2005; Kroth et al. 2008). The former role was probably easily filled as the N of the medium remained high whereas the latter one is unlikely as the capacity to dissipate the excess of energy through the non-photochemical quenching was not exhausted. Altogether, our results highlight that photorespiration is not particularly enhanced, even under HL, since no differential of expression was found for photo-respiration genes under HL or LL compared to ML.

### 3.5.2 The stationary phase: adaptation to carbon deficiency conditions

The stationary phase is characterized by a very low, close to zero, cell division rate and a reduced respiration rate (Figure 3.4 and Supplemental Figure 3.1). It is currently admitted that the establishment of a stationary phase results from the occurrence of a deficiency in at least one growth factor, including photon availability. The reasoning presented above suggests that C-deficiency was mostly responsible for the occurrence of stationary phase. The fact that under ML and HL, the amount of Chl a and carotenoids were higher in phase 3 than phase 2 suggested that cellular shading effect might also be partly responsible of the occurrence of the stationary phase. The additional pigments are used to maintain the photosynthetic activity during this phase. This change was less intense under LL probably because the pigment cellular quota was already almost at its maximum. This data in itself constitutes interesting information for biotechnological applications aiming to produce high added value pigments that can be used in many industries, including food coloring and health (Mimouni et al. 2012; Heydarizadeh et al. 2013; Leu & Boussiba, 2014; Adolfsson et al. 2015). The slight increase in the qN values observed in phase 3 suggests that energy production and energy expenditure were somehow more unbalanced than during phase 2 (Figure 3.5).

In the preceding section, we have hypothesized that the flux of C is directed to the formation of 2PG, which is ultimately used to produce PEP. Accordingly, an up-regulation of PPDK gene under the three growth light intensities was recorded. A similar conclusion can be reached for the mitochondria. Actually, PYC1 and PEPCK were highly up-regulated in phase 3 under ML (69 and 42 fold the expression in phase 1, respectively) and, HL (227 and 56 fold) (Supplemental Figure 3.8) suggesting the orientation of the utilization of pyruvate for PEP formation with OAA as an intermediate. Thus, if we hypothesize that the change in gene expression reflects
somehow the enzyme amount, one can predict that under ML and HL, a large proportion of the OAA pool is used to synthesize PEP whereas under LL, a significant part of it enters the TCA cycle to be respirated. Indeed the respiratory activity was higher under this light condition (Figure 3.4). Pyruvate can also be produced by mitochondrial ME1 from malate. ME1 supplies both carbon and reducing equivalents in the form of NADPH for de novo fatty acid production (kroth et al. 2008; Xue et al. 2015). Little is known about the role of ME in fatty acid and TAG biosynthesis in microalgae (Shtaida et al. 2015) but it has been reported previously (Yang et al. 2013; Xue et al. 2015) that under N depletion, ME encoding genes may stimulate lipid production. In this study, no N deprivation was observed and accordingly, ME1 was down-regulated under LL, ML and HL, mostly in phase 3 (2.5, 6.0, 3.7 fold, respectively) (Supplemental Figure 3.8) suggesting that this possibility is unlikely. One hypothesis could be the shunt of malate from mitochondria to plastid and up-regulation of plastidial ME2 (it is not studied in this experiment) that could provide the precursur of A-CoA, i.e. pyruvate, for fatty acid biosynthesis (Ge et al. 2014). This would be consistent with the involvement of the mitochondrial pool of pyruvate in CCM to produce PEP that might be exported in other cell compartments. PEP can be used for (1) cytosolic gluconeogenesis to produce glucose. Several genes coding enzymes localized in the cytosol, particularly in the glycolysis pathway, were differentially regulated. The genes coding the cytosolic GPI_1, Fba4 and GAPDH (function in both glycolysis and gluconeogenesis pathways) were up-regulated in phase 2 and 3 under ML and HL (Supplemental Figure 3.8). The gene coding the cytosolic FBP in the opposite direction, i.e. gluconeogenesis (Figure 3.7) was on the contrary down-regulated (8, 28 and 14 fold its expression in phase 1 under ML for respectively phase 3 of LL, ML and HL) (2) transformed into pyruvate by a PK enzyme. This last possibility seems limited because the expression of the mitochondrial, chloroplastic and cytosolic PKs either did not changed or were down-regulated and/or (3) translocated in the plastid using transporters, where it may serves as building blocks e.g. aromatic amino acids and lipids.

For aromatic amino acids, the expression of 6 genes coding enzymes involved in the Shikimate pathway was studied. AroB and SK were slightly down-regulated in the 3 conditions, leading us to hypothesize that this is not the direction of carbon flux (Supplemental Figure 3.8).

It is usually reported that phase 3 is characterized by lipid accumulation (Valenzuela et al. 2012; Mus et al. 2013; Wu et al. 2015). A moderate lipid accumulation was also observed in this study under ML and HL (Figure 3.2). The origin of the lipid biosynthesis, i.e. PEP or pyruvate, is still under debate. Some authors have assumed that lipid biosynthesis branch from PEP (Kroth et al. 2008; Mus et al. 2013), while some others revealed that it goes through pyruvate (Ge et al. 2014; Radakovits et al. 2010; Schwender et al. 2014; Yang et al. 2013; Ma et al. 2014).
The pyruvate dehydrogenase complex (PDC) is an important enzyme of lipid metabolism. Three isoforms of pyruvate dehydrogenase, namely PDH1, PDHB1 and PDHA1, were found in the *P. tricornutum* genome (Chauton et al. 2013). PDH1 was the most expressed in phase 1 for the 3 conditions but its mRNA expression decreased in phase 2 and 3 while the expression of the PDHA1 increased. PDHB1 level did not change significantly (Supplemental Figure 3.8). Moreover, the mRNA expression of the 2 isoforms of A-CoA carboxylase (ACC1 and ACC2), which catalyze the conversion of A-CoA into malonylCoA for fatty acid production, indicated a singular pattern: a higher expression of both genes in LL (up to 2 fold the expression of ML) and an up-regulation of ACC2 in phase 3 (though not significant for HL) were found. It seems higher expression of these genes during phase 3 under LL, speed up the conversion of pyruvate to malonyl-CoA. This compound is a key cofactor of the fatty acid biosynthesis.

These results support the results of lipid quantification that showed an increase in the lipid amount in phase 1 under LL and under phase 2 and/or 3 under LL and ML. Lipid production promoted by physical environmental stimuli and light intensity is one of the main physiological cues of diatoms (Hu et al. 2008; Sharma et al. 2012). Also, growth phase and aging of the culture have already been shown to affect TAG content and fatty acid composition (Fidalgo et al. 1998; Hu et al. 2008). The importance of high biomass production rate in enhancing algal lipid production was reported by Sukenik (1991). A positive correlation between lipid production (PUFAs) and cell concentration in *P. tricornutum* has also been observed by Yongmanitchai & Ward (1991). However, other studies have reported the reduce of total lipid production by the increase of light intensity and increase of algal growth rate (Terry et al. 1983; Spectorova et al. 1986; Sukenik et al. 1989; Tedesco & Duerr, 1989; Harrison et al. 1990; Thompson et al. 1990; Renaud et al. 1991). Consequently, increasing algal productivity by increasing irradiance might reduce the algal lipid productivity. From the qualitative point of view, the results presented here are in line with those published by Nogueira et al. (2015), which showed an increase of TAG content of *P. tricornutum*, was observed by increasing the irradiance values from LL (50 μmol m$^{-2}$ s$^{-1}$) to ML (300 μmol m$^{-2}$ s$^{-1}$) while decreasing under HL (600 μmol m$^{-2}$ s$^{-1}$).

In this study, several CAs were found to be differentially regulated both by the growth of the culture and by the light intensity (see above). The CA protein family is composed of proteins, which have different cellular sublocations (*e.g.* chloroplast, periplasm, cytosol) (Tachibana et al. 2011), a factor that will contribute to define their role in the cell physiology. CAs catalyze the reversible reaction of CO$_2$ hydratation and thus their physiological function deeply relies on the local pH of the compartments in which the enzymes are present. Interestingly, and only for LL, the two bCAs (bCA4/PtCA1 and bCA5/PtCA2; Tachibana et al. 2011) were highly up-regulated in phase 3, reaching 16 and 8 according to the data I have is 32 and 8 fold their expression in phase 1 ML (Figure 3.10). Recent investigations revealed that RubisCo and btype CAs
(bCA4 and bCA5) are located in the pyrenoid of *P. tricornutum* and that these CAs are induced remarkably at low CO₂ concentrations to efficiently bring CO₂ at the proximity of RubisCo (Harada & Matsuda, 2005; Harada et al. 2005; Tachibana et al. 2011). bCAs were previously reported by several authors to change in mRNA accumulation under different growth conditions (Harada et al. 2005; Harada & Matsuda, 2005; Tachibana et al. 2011). Higher expression of these genes under LL in phase 3 may show the lower efficiency of RubisCo, consistent with the decrease of mRNA expression in phase 3 LL of *rbcS* and *rbcL* (13 and 25 fold, respectively) (Figure 3.9), providing thus more CO₂ around this enzyme. Accordingly, we postulate that under LL, the increase in the pigment content (Figure 3.3) is a way to compensate for the lower expression of genes encoding RubisCo. Also, down-regulation of 2 out of the 3 HCO₃⁻ transporters SLV (SLV4_1 and SLV4_3) was observed in this same phase under LL (1.6 and 1.4 fold, respectively).

In *P. tricornutum* putative CA1, CA2, CA6 (except CA7) seems to be transcriptionally active and expressed independently of light and CO₂ conditions, and thus appear to be synthesized constitutively. (Tachibana et al. 2011). The gene coding CA7, that is located in PPS, was down-regulated in the 3 conditions compared to phase 1 (9, 10 and 4 fold respectively for LL, ML and HL in phase 3; Supplemental Figure 3.8). The genes coding for CA2, CA6 (and CA1 but to a lesser extend because of its low expression in phase 3 under ML), were up-regulated in phases 2 and phase 3 in ML (between 1 and 3 fold) and in HL (between 1 and 3 fold) while down-regulated in LL (between 1 and 2 fold). Among several CCM related genes, Winck et al. (2013) suggested that some CAs may function on determining the structure of the pyrenoid while not essential to the CCM process itself. CCM mechanisms together allow cells to increase inorganic carbon uptake and to keep high photosynthetic rates under low CO₂ environmental conditions. Based on our finding the expression of CA genes was light and also growth phase dependent (Supplemental Figure 3.8). However, due to the lack of studies published in similar conditions than those used in here, direct conclusions are complicated. In general, the nature of the CCM operating in diatoms is not clear and the extent of its expression may be species-specific and strongly affected by growth conditions (Roberts et al. 2007; Reinfelder, 2011). Altogether, this study highlighted the activation of different pathways toward PEP and pyruvate synthesis. These two precursors are the key branch points early in the partitioning of carbon in some pathways including protein and lipid biosynthesis. Also they important intermediates in gluconeogenesis (the opposite direction of glycolysis) to produce energy (ATP), glucose and also storage (as chrysolaminarin) for the cell.
3.5.3 Adapting to low light condition

The pigment concentration under LL was higher than the other conditions, while $A_{\text{max}}$ was lower (Figures 3.3 and 3.4), demonstrating that the low photosynthetic activity was due to low irradiance level. This is also demonstrated by the high values of qP (Figure 3.5) and the absence of activation of mechanism for excess energy dissipation. It has been reported that the photosynthetic capacity of *P. tricornutum* cells, can vary greatly depending on growth conditions (Griffiths, 1973). Compare to photosynthesis, respiration of diatom cells under LL condition was high (Figure 3.4), suggesting that increase of cell division rate in diatoms required another source of energy than the one made through photosynthesis. Actually, algae tried to increase this production by accumulating more photosynthetic pigments (Chl a, Chl c, carotenoids) than the cells growing under ML or HL (Figure 3.3). This acclimation mechanism started very early as it was already observed after three days of growth. These pigments are integrated in functional photosynthetic pigments as indicated by the typical value of the maximum quantum yield of photosystem II (Fv/Fm) that did not decreased. Actually, it has been shown that samples containing non-integrated Chl molecules are characterized by a low Fv/Fm ratio linked to a higher $F_0$ value (higher plants: Schoefs & Franck 1991; Schoefs et al. 1992; algae: Lamote et al. 2003). Indeed, these additional pigment molecules are used to form very large light harvesting antennae as indicated by the low values of the Chl a/Chl c ratio, a proxy of the LHC size (Lamote et al. 2003; Nguyen-Deroche et al. 2012). This interpretation is line with previous results (*Isochrysis* sp.: Marchetti et al. 2013; *P. tricornutum*: Beardall & Morris, 1976; *Skeletonema costatum*: Anning et al. 2000). From the biosynthetic point of view, the decrease of the Chl a/Chl c ratio, combined with the large increase of the total amount of Chl under LL suggest a strong activation of the Chl biosynthetic pathway and a channelling of the precursors toward Chl c formation. In the absence of data about the Chl c biosynthetic pathway and its regulation, this point is difficult to discuss (Beale 1999; Tanaka & Tanaka, 2007). Therefore, only some elements are given here to stimulate further experimentations. First of all, from the chemical point of view, Chl c is not a Chl but a protochlorophyllide (Schoefs, 2002) i.e. a molecule that is well known to serve as regular Chl precursor (Schoefs, 2001; Schoefs & Franck, 2003). Thus to explain our result, one should imagine that the pool of divinyl (DV)-protochlorophyllide is funnel preferentially toward Chl c formation. In the absence of gene candidate for this conversion, it is not possible to determine whether the increase of Chl c would require control of gene expression and/or a regulation at another level.

One of the aim of the increase of the light harvesting capacity is the allocation of energy in the carbon concentrating mechanism (CCM) operation, especially for the LL grown cells, which need more energy for operation of CCMs (Li et al. 2014). Thus, in
conditions for which the demand for operation of CCM is lower, the energy saved can be invested for growth.

Because, the assembly of functional LHC requires adequate pigment amount, the carotenoid pathway is also activated to generate the fucoxanthin molecules required for the assembly of functional LHC (Dambek et al. 2012). Alternatively, and not exclusively, carotenoids are needed to quench ROS that could have been formed by the nonintegrated Chl molecules (Franck et al. 1995; Schoefs & Franck, 2003). It has been reported that the Chl and Car biosynthetic pathways are usually coupled (Schoefs et al. 2001; Bidigare et al. 2014). Despite of the larger amount of pigments, the photosynthetic activity remained weak (Figure 3.4) and very close to the respiration activity. Thus, LL intensity used in this work for growing the cells provides conditions closed to the compensation point. In these conditions, the PSII reaction centers remained permanently open and the non-photochemical quenching was absent (Figure 3.5).

Under LL $Q_c$ values were either close or higher than under ML and HL, while C uptake was significantly lower under LL than in two other conditions (Figure 3.2). This is not completely unexpected as growth rate was the lowest under LL (Table 3.1) and therefore the need for C import was low. The comparison of $Q_c$ values reached in the different phases suggests that in LL conditions, the photon deficiency triggers a decrease of $Q_c$ along growth. This conclusion is in line with that reached with the diatom *Thalassiosira fluviatilis* (Laws & Bannister, 1980) and the Prymnesiophyceae *Isochrysis* sp. (Marchetti et al. 2013) grown in continuous culture under LL conditions.

**3.5.4 High light adaptation**

Cells growing under HL conditions received 30 times more than under LL and three times more energy than those grown under control condition (ML). The additional energy brought by HL conditions did not result in an increase of growth rate when compared to ML (Table 3.1) because photosynthesis performed only slightly better – but not significantly – in this condition than in ML (Figure 3.4). This interpretation is confirmed by the reduced amount of pigments present in diatom cells grown in these conditions and by the reduced LHC size (Supplemental Figure 3.2) (Janssen et al. 2001; Perry et al. 1981). In addition, under ML and HL, the growth rate was the fastest and the amount of pigments was the lowest. This suggests a coregulation of the cell cycle and cell development. Alternatively, the cell division rate could be faster than the rate of pigment biosynthesis.

Under HL, diatoms received more photons and the excess light energy could trigger the production of reactive oxygen species (ROS) and/or damage photosystems. To overcome the consequences of excess energy dissipation mechanisms are activated (Depauw et al. 2012; Bertrand et al. 2001). Under HL, 50% of the PSII were closed
permanently whereas the excess of absorbed energy was dissipated through the establishment of non-photochemical quenching (qN) (Figure 3.6), which may involve in diatoms several mechanisms: dissipation by the establishment of the proton gradient (ΔpH relaxation) and the xanthophyll cycle, diatoxanthin (Dtx) de-epoxidation fast conformational changes in the vicinity of the PSII complexes and/or photoinhibition (Roháček et al. 2014). The analysis of the qN relaxation kinetics demonstrated that the energy was mostly dissipated through the operation of the xanthophyll cycle, which in diatoms consists in the reversible conversion of diadinoxanthin to diatoxanthin (Moulin et al. 2010; Bertrand 2010; Goss & Jakob, 2010).

Under HL, the dissipation of the excess was mostly performed by means of the establishment of the proton gradient (ΔpH relaxation) and the xanthophyll cycle and photoinhibition. The involvement of this process is confirmed by the increase of $P_{B\text{max}}$ level under HL (Suppemental Table 3.5). The extent of photo-inhibition (qNs) (Figure 3.6) remained approximately constant along growth but contributed more intensively in phase 1 under HL i.e. when the photon/Chl ratio was the highest. During this phase, carbon uptake was low and one can hypothesized that the ROS formed within the chloroplasts have constituted the signal leading to the decrease of the pigment content during the transition to phase 2. It was reported that increasing the irradiance level triggered an increase of the $Q_c$ of the diatom *Thalassiosira pseudonana* (Taraldsvik & Myklesad, 2000) and in *Isochrysis affinis galbana* (Sukenik & Wahon, 1991). Our measurements do not confirm this conclusion because in this study we have compared cells that are approximately in the same physiological state (see above) whereas in other studies, the cells are compared according to the time basis. It is interesting to note that in phase 2 the pH of the medium (8.7) is more alkaline than in phase 1 (8.2) (data not shown). In *Skeletonema costatum*, such an increase favors CO$_2$ uptake and the accumulation of amino acids (Taraldsvik & Myklesad, 2000). On the other hand, the increase in irradiance triggered favored the accumulation of carbohydrates and neutral lipids in *Isochrysis affinis galbana* (Sukenik & Wahon, 1991). In our conditions, *Phaeodactylum tricornutum* accumulated protein under HL while carbohydrates under LL.

**3.5.5 Influence of light intensity on the regulation of different pathways**

Altogether, physiological and molecular data revealed in this study showed that ML and HL impacted the diatom very similar and quite differently from the LL. Indeed, growth rate, photosynthesis and respiration and mRNA expressions were not significantly different between the two conditions, suggesting different adaptations with particular enzymes that may have important flux roles with respect to light intensity.

Under LL, the cellular energy was limited. To generate more energy for carbon fixation diatom cells increased their capacity to harvest more photons as possible
However under LL conditions, the available energy remained low. Remarkably, the cells managed to fix similar carbon amount than under ML and HL intensity. This could not be possible without the activation of CCM mechanisms as well as the mobilisation of main energy generating pathways (Calvin cycle, glycolysis, CCM, photorespiration). This was especially evident during phase 1 during which the gene expression was higher than under HL.

One of the main results of this study was the orientation of the metabolism toward pyruvate formation. Pyruvate may be used for gluconeogenesis to produce glucose that, in turn, can be assembled into high molecular weight carbohydrates as chrysolaminarin. The relative amount of chrysolaminarin was found to increase only under LL. Indeed, mRNAs of the first enzyme of the chrysolaminarin synthesis, BGS1 (β-1,3-glucane glycosyl-transferase) was found to be slightly overexpressed (2 fold) under LL compared to ML and HL and tend to decrease in phase 2 and phase 3. Another interesting feature revealed by this study was that mRNA profiles differ in the activity of the biophysical CCM that seems to be particularly different with lower mRNA content of key genes (PPDK, CAs and SLV, GDCP under LL and HL (compared to ML). This could mean that the cells are provided by other CO₂ source(s) such as lipid degradation or simply regulate their income of CO₂ according to the available energy.

Compared to ML, genes encoding FbaC5, TPI_1 and TPI_2 were up-regulated under LL, phase 3, while the expression of the other genes in the Calvin–Benson cycle decreased, dramatically in the case of RubisCo (Figure 3.10). This movement was accompanied by an up-regulation of photorespiratory genes. The question was how storage of cell i.e. chrysolaminarin was increased under LL, especially in phase 3 (Figure 3.2) while carbon fixation was decreased by less expression of RubisCo genes. According to the hypothesis of Kroth et al. (2008) that synthesized glyceralte in photorespiration may back to the Calvin–Benson cycle by the activation of glyceralte kinase (GK) (see Figure 3.7). We concluded more expression of key enzymes of this pathway may lead to enter more synthesized glyceralte in the Calvin–Benson cycle that may contribute for chrysolaminarin accumulation, as it is described before. Indeed, photorespiratory pathway plays a critical role in carbon and nitrogen metabolism in diatom (Parker & Armbrust, 2005). HL condition, high concentrations of O₂ and poor performance of RubisCo enzyme type, are known as major reasons to enhance photorespiration in marine algae (Beardall, 1989; Spreitzer, 1999; Ogren & Bowes, 1971; Sage & Stata, 2015). Under our growing conditions, the gene coding the peroxisomal MS enzyme was down-regulated under LL and HL (except in phase 3) suggesting that the direct shunt of glycolate from plastid to mitochondria would be stronger than its shunt to peroxisome.

One particularity of phase 3 was the up-regulation of genes coding proteins involved in the biophysical CCM. Under LL, it was essentially the bCAs that were up-regulated whereas under HL it was PPDK, SLVs and CAs that were overexpressed (Figure 3.10). bCA4 and bCA5 were previously shown to be CO₂ responsive and changing in
accumulation of their mRNAs consistent with those reported previously by several authors under different growth conditions (Harada et al. 2005; Harada & Matsuda, 2005; Tachibana et al. 2011). Higher expression of ‘CCM genes’ in phase 3 is consistent with the low CO₂ available at this growth phase. It is interesting that the different gene set were induced according to the growth light intensity.

3.6 Acknowledgments

The authors are grateful to the Bing Huang, Vincent Blanckaert, French Ministry for Education and Scientific Research and the University of Le Mans, Collège doctoral of the University of Le Mans, Ministry of Forein Office and Isfahan University of Technology (IUT) for their help and support in preparing this manuscript.

3.7 References


Phaeodactylum tricornutum.
Plant Cell 26: 1681–1697.


Griffiths D.J. (1973). Factors affecting photosynthetic capacity of laboratory cultures of diatoms 


He L., Han X. & Yu Z. (2014). A rare 


3.8 Supplemental data

Supplemental data 3.1: *Phaeodactylum tricornutum* growth curve

![Graph showing growth curve of *Phaeodactylum tricornutum* under different light intensities.](image)

**Figure 3.1. Growth of *Phaeodactylum tricornutum* under different light intensities.**

Time course of cell density of cultures developing under 30 (LL), 300 (ML) and 1000 (HL) µmol m⁻² s⁻¹. Each curve presents typical growth phases *i.e.* lag (phase 1), exponential (phase 2) and plateau (phase 3). The sampling time in each phase is indicated using arrows.

The insert presents a light microscopy picture of *P. tricornutum* grown under ML. The bar indicates 10 µm.
Supplemental data 3.2: Cellular pigment quota

Figure 3.2. Pigments content per cell in *Phaeodactylum tricornutum* grown under different light intensities.

Changing photon flux densities altered pigment concentrations. The time-course of Chl *a* and total carotenoids accumulations were very similar under ML and HL: both decreased during the transition between phase 1 to phase 2 and significantly increased in phase 3. Under LL, the level of individual pigments increased from phase 1 to phase 3 except Chl c that first decreased and then increased. During phase 1 and phase 3, Chl c content was higher under LL than under ML or HL. Under LL, the ratio increased from phase 1 to phase 2 and then decreased until phase 3 is reached. At the end of phase 3 the ratio was similar for all conditions. Interestingly, total carotenoids mostly followed the Chl *a*/Chl c ratio except during phase 2 to phase 3 transition under LL.

Data are mean values ± SE (n = 3) and error bars represent SD. Means followed by asterisks are significantly different from the corresponding value for ML (p<0.05).
Supplemental data 3.3: Net photosynthesis and respiratory activities

Figure 3.3. Impact of growth phase and photon flux density on net photosynthesis ($A_{\text{max}}$) and respiration ($R_d$) activities in *Phaeodactylum tricornutum*. $A_{\text{max}}$ and $R_d$ were higher under ML and HL than under LL except during phase 3. However, when taken individually, neither $R_d$ nor $A_{\text{max}}$ were significantly affected by the value of the photon flux density during phase 1 and phase 2. During phase 3, $R_d$ strongly decreased whereas $A_{\text{max}}$ decreased by circa 20% only. Values represent the mean ± SE ($n = 3$) and error bars represent SD. Means followed by different letters and asterisks are significantly different in each light intensity and each growth phase, respectively ($p<0.05$).
Supplemental data 3.4: Kinetic of Chl a fluorescence

Management of the incoming light energy

Figure 3.4 displays Chl fluorescence induction kinetics of *P. tricornutum* cells recorded under different light conditions. Comparison of the curves clearly indicated the differences between Fs levels. The $F_0$, $F_M$, $F'_0$, $F'_M$, $F''_0$, and $F''_M$ were used to quantify parameters (Table 3.4) describing how the photosynthetic apparatus was managing the absorbed energy. They are briefly described below. For a comprehensive description, the reader is referred to Roháček et al. (2008, 2014).

Figure 3.4. Chl fluorescence induction kinetics of *P. tricornutum* under LL, ML and HL. $F_0$: minimal fluorescence yield of dark-adapted sample with all PS II centers open; $F_M$: maximal fluorescence yield of dark-adapted sample with all PS II centers closed; $F'_M$: maximal fluorescence yield of illuminated sample with all PS II centers closed; $F''_0$: minimal fluorescence yield of illuminated sample with all PS II centers open (measured immediately after acclimation to light); AL: actinic light; ML: modulated light; SP: saturation pulse serving for transient full closure of PSII centers.
Table 3.4. Commonly fluorescence parameters used throughout the text for quantification of the photochemical ($\Phi_{P0}$, qP, $\Phi_P$, $\Phi_{II}$) and non-photochemical (qN, q0, NPQ) processes (Equations according to Roháček et al. 2008).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Photochemical quenching parameters:</strong></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$\Phi_{P0}$</td>
<td>Maximum quantum yield of PSII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\Phi_{II}$</td>
<td>Photochemical efficiency of PSII</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qP</td>
<td>Photochemical quenching</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-qP</td>
<td>Degree of PSII reaction centre closure</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Non-photochemical quenching parameters:</strong></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>NPQ</td>
<td>Non-photochemical quenching</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>q0</td>
<td>Relative change of minimum Chlorophyll F</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qN</td>
<td>Non-photochemical quenching of variable Chlorophyll F</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Maximum quantum yield of PSII photochemistry** ($\Phi_{P0}$): it quantifies the maximum photochemical efficiency of PSII in a dark-adapted state and is serve as a proxy of the fitness of the photosynthetic apparatus.

**Effective quantum yield of photochemical energy conversion in PSII** ($\Phi_{II}$): it quantifies efficiency of photochemical processes during conversion of the excitation energy by actually open PSII reaction centers.

**Photochemical quenching of variable Chlorophyll fluorescence** (qP): it quantifies the actual photochemical capacity of PSII and is proportional to the fraction of PSII reaction centers being actually in the open state under actinic irradiation.

**Degree of PSII reaction centre closure** (1-qP): it quantifies the proportion of centers that are closed and sometimes termed to “excitation pressure” on PSII (Maxwell and Johnson, 2000).

**Non-photochemical chlorophyll fluorescence quenching** (NPQ, qN): it reflects the excess radiation converted to heat during the actinic irradiation. Its extent correlates mostly to diatoxanthin formation. NPQ calculation differs from that of qN in the fact that the former relies on maximum fluorescence levels whereas the later relies on the variable fluorescence (see Supplemental Table 3.4; Roháček et al. 2008).

**Relative change of minimum Chlorophyll fluorescence** (q0): it is linked to processes of the non-photochemical nature activated in thylakoid membranes under the actinic irradiation.

qN analyses were performed as explained in Roháček et al. (2014). From the mechanism point of view, qNi relies on the dissipation of the proton gradient ($\Delta pH$ relaxation) and diatoxanthin epoxidation. qNf seems to be related to a fast conformational changes
occurring within the thylakoid membranes in the vicinity of the PSII complexes, whereas qNs could be related to photoinhibition and/or partial dissipation of the pH gradient (Roháček et al. 2014).

References


Supplemental data 3.5: Photosynthesis irradiance curve

To determine the optimal and stress-related photon flux densities in *P. tricornutum* the variations of gross photosynthesis activity as a function of the incoming photon flux density was measured using an oxygen electrode using LL, ML or HL adapted cells (see section ‘Photosynthetic and Respiratory Activity, PI-curve’ in Material and method section). Figure 3.5. presents the variations obtained with ML adapted *P. tricornutum* cells. Similar curves were obtained with the diatoms adapted to LL or HL (data not shown).

PI-curves were fitted according to the model of Eilers & Peeters (1988) using the CurveExpert. From these data, the following parameters were calculated:

- **$\alpha_B$ parameter:** it is defined as the initial slope of the PI-curve. This parameter is usually considered as proportional to the efficiency in which microalgae harvest light (Eilers & Peeters, 1988, Nguyen-Deroche et al. 2012).

- **$P_B^{\text{max}}$ parameter:** it is defined as the asymptotic value of PI-curve. It reflects the maximal gross photosynthetic activity (Eilers & Peeters, 1988, Nguyen-Deroche et al. 2012).

- **$E_k$ parameter:** it is defined as the irradiance corresponding to the intercept between $\alpha_B$ and $P_B^{\text{max}}$. It defines the irradiance levels for which photosynthesis starts to be saturating (Eilers & Peeters, 1988, Nguyen-Deroche et al. 2012).

- **Light compensation irradiance ($L_{ci}$):** it is defined as the irradiance level for which the rate of oxygen production through photosynthesis exactly matches the rate of oxygen consumption through respiration.

The values obtained for the several LL, ML and HL adapted cells parameters are compared in Table 3.5. The value of $E_k$ for the diatoms adapted to ML is very close to 300 $\mu$mol m$^{-2}$ s$^{-1}$. It also indicates that the irradiances choosen as LL and HL provides stress conditions to the diatoms.
Figure 3.5. PI-curve recorded in *Phaeodactylum tricornutum* adapted to ML.
Diatom cells were grown under ML as explained in the Material and method section (experiment strategy and sampling). The mean experimental points (n = 15) and the fitting curve are indicated in green. The dashed lines indicate the values of $\alpha^B$, $P^B_{\text{max}}$, $E_k$ and $L_{ci}$.

Table 3.5. Parameters of PI-curves in *Phaeodactylum tricornutum* grown under LL, ML and HL. PI-curves were fitted according to the model of Eilers & Peeters (1988) using the CurveExpert software. Significant different data are indicated with different superscript letters (Tukey Test, $p \leq 0.05$). Mean values ± SE (n = 3–5).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Irradiance (µmol m$^{-2}$s$^{-1}$)</th>
<th>30</th>
<th>300</th>
<th>1000</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$\alpha^B$ (µmol O$_2$ h$^{-1}$ µg$^{-1}$ Chl a)</td>
<td>0.0006 ± 0.0004*</td>
<td>0.0021 ± 0.0005</td>
<td>0.0013 ± 0.0002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$P^B_{\text{max}}$ (µmol O$_2$ h$^{-1}$ µg$^{-1}$ Chl a)</td>
<td>0.173 ± 0.035*</td>
<td>0.825 ± 0.159</td>
<td>0.582 ± 0.055*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$E_k$ (µmol m$^{-2}$s$^{-1}$)</td>
<td>176.87 ± 21.98*</td>
<td>374.49 ± 38.30</td>
<td>440.79 ± 38.30*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$L_{ci}$ (µmol m$^{-2}$s$^{-1}$)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

References

### Supplemental data 3.6: List of enzymes and related genes

Table 3.6. Name and sequences of the primers used, ID and localization. List of the enzymes and of their corresponding gene/isogene(s), protein ID (http://genome.jgi.doe.gov/Phatr2/Phatr2.home.html) and primers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Enzyme</th>
<th>Gene abbreviation</th>
<th>Protein ID</th>
<th>Compartment</th>
<th>Primer-F (5'-3')</th>
<th>Primer-R (5'-3')</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pyruvate phosphate dikinase</td>
<td>PPDK</td>
<td>21988</td>
<td>plastid</td>
<td>CAGCGGGTTGAGCAAAGCACAT                                                         TCATACAGCGTGAAGCAGTGGAATGG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phosphoenolpyruvate carboxylase</td>
<td>PEPC1</td>
<td>51136</td>
<td>plastid</td>
<td>AATTGCCAAGGCTGGGTTC                                                            ATGACGTTAGGCTCCAAAACCA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malate dehydrogenase</td>
<td>MDH</td>
<td>51297</td>
<td>mitochondria</td>
<td>CAACCGCTCGATAGCTCT                                                             TGTCGACTGAGATCCTCGAGCT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malate synthase</td>
<td>MS</td>
<td>54478</td>
<td>peroxisome</td>
<td>GGGCCTGTATAGTG CATCA                                                           AGCTGTACATTCCGCGCAACT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phosphoenolpyruvate carboxykinase</td>
<td>PECK</td>
<td>55018</td>
<td>mitochondria</td>
<td>GCGAAATACGGTGACACATT                                                             CTTCGCTCTCGGATCCCTTA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phosphoglycolate phosphatase</td>
<td>PGP</td>
<td>48026</td>
<td>plastid</td>
<td>ACGGCTGAACACACGCGGAAC                                                         CGGTAACCACACACGCTCA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pyruvate carboxylase</td>
<td>PYC1</td>
<td>30519</td>
<td>mitochondria</td>
<td>TTTGACGGCTGGCATTT                                                             GGCACGTTAGATGCTGGTGA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PYC2</td>
<td>49339</td>
<td>plastid</td>
<td>GAAAATCCCGAGGAGAACT                                                           GAGATATACATTGGCGTGCAAT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sedoheptulose-1,7-biphosphatase</td>
<td>SBP</td>
<td>56467</td>
<td>cytosol</td>
<td>GGACGCGAGAGGATAC                                                                GGCGAGACTGTCGATCCCGTT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hydroxypyruvate reductase/glycerate</td>
<td>HPR</td>
<td>56499</td>
<td>mitochondria</td>
<td>GATCTCCGCGCTGGT GATT                                                            GAGGCTTCTCGGAGTCAAC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glyceralddehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase</td>
<td>GAPC1</td>
<td>22122</td>
<td>plastid</td>
<td>ACGGACTGATCGTCGGCAAT                                                           GGCTGGCGAGTAGATGACCT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GAPDH</td>
<td>23598</td>
<td>cytosol</td>
<td>TGACGATCGGGCTCTATGCTC                                                         CGTCGAGCTGGAAAGGATTG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>GapC4 (TPI/GapC3)</td>
<td>32747/25308</td>
<td>mitochondria</td>
<td>TTCCGAGTGGCTGGTGGTTC                                                           TGACGATCCCTTTGCGTCCA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6-phosphogluconate dehydrogenase</td>
<td>6PGDH</td>
<td>45333</td>
<td>cytosol</td>
<td>CTACGCAAGCCTCGGAAAGT                                                           AATTGCGTATGCTCCTTGAT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oxoglutarate/malate transporter</td>
<td>OMT1</td>
<td>8990</td>
<td>mitochondria</td>
<td>ATTACCATGAAACGCCGAAA                                                           GGGCGAGCGCATAGATGAG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pyruvate kinase</td>
<td>PK1</td>
<td>22404</td>
<td>plastid</td>
<td>CGGATGTTGAGCAGAGAAGCA                                                          AAGGCGTATGCTGGCAATGTT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PK2</td>
<td>49098</td>
<td>cytosol</td>
<td>GTAGCGGCAACACGAGCCGTT                                                          AGGCGAGCGCAGGCTCAAGAG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PK3</td>
<td>56445</td>
<td>cytosol</td>
<td>ATGCGGATCGGGTGAAGAAGCG                                                      TGTTGTGCTGAGATCCTGAGTT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PK4a/PK4b</td>
<td>45997/27502</td>
<td>cytosol</td>
<td>ATTTGCGTCCGGGTGTTGAAGCT                                                      TGCCCAACAGCAATCCACT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accession</td>
<td>Position</td>
<td>Organelle</td>
<td>DNA Sequence</td>
<td>Protein Name</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PK5</td>
<td>49002</td>
<td>mitochondria</td>
<td>TGCAGCTACCCGTTCTATAATTC</td>
<td>CTTACCCGACTACCCCTGTTCAAGAAG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PK6</td>
<td>56172</td>
<td>mitochondria</td>
<td>CTTACCCGACTACCCCTGTTCAAGAAG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLV4_1</td>
<td>45656</td>
<td>plastid</td>
<td>GCCACCCGACTACCCCTGTTCAAGAAG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLV4_2</td>
<td>32359</td>
<td>plastid</td>
<td>GCCACCCGACTACCCCTGTTCAAGAAG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SLV4_3</td>
<td>54405</td>
<td>membrane</td>
<td>TGACCCTACCCCTGTTCAAGAAG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TGI_1</td>
<td>18228</td>
<td>plastid</td>
<td>ACCTTCACCCGTTCTGTTCAAGAAG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TGI_2</td>
<td>50738</td>
<td>plastid</td>
<td>ACCTTCACCCGTTCTGTTCAAGAAG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FBP</td>
<td>23247</td>
<td>cytosol</td>
<td>GCCACCCGACTACCCCTGTTCAAGAAG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FBP1</td>
<td>42886</td>
<td>plastid</td>
<td>GCCACCCGACTACCCCTGTTCAAGAAG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FBP2</td>
<td>42456</td>
<td>plastid</td>
<td>GCCACCCGACTACCCCTGTTCAAGAAG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FBP3</td>
<td>34145</td>
<td>plastid</td>
<td>GCCACCCGACTACCCCTGTTCAAGAAG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FBP4</td>
<td>54279</td>
<td>plastid</td>
<td>GCCACCCGACTACCCCTGTTCAAGAAG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPI_3</td>
<td>56512</td>
<td>plastid</td>
<td>GCCACCCGACTACCCCTGTTCAAGAAG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPI_1</td>
<td>23924</td>
<td>cytosol</td>
<td>GCCACCCGACTACCCCTGTTCAAGAAG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPI</td>
<td>53878</td>
<td>cytosol</td>
<td>GCCACCCGACTACCCCTGTTCAAGAAG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fba3</td>
<td>29014</td>
<td>plastid</td>
<td>GCCACCCGACTACCCCTGTTCAAGAAG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fba4</td>
<td>42447</td>
<td>cytosol</td>
<td>GCCACCCGACTACCCCTGTTCAAGAAG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FbaC1</td>
<td>825</td>
<td>plastid</td>
<td>GCCACCCGACTACCCCTGTTCAAGAAG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FbaC2</td>
<td>22993</td>
<td>plastid</td>
<td>GCCACCCGACTACCCCTGTTCAAGAAG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FbaC5</td>
<td>51289</td>
<td>plastid</td>
<td>GCCACCCGACTACCCCTGTTCAAGAAG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA1</td>
<td>35370</td>
<td>secreted</td>
<td>GCCACCCGACTACCCCTGTTCAAGAAG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA2</td>
<td>44526</td>
<td>secreted</td>
<td>GCCACCCGACTACCCCTGTTCAAGAAG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA3</td>
<td>55209</td>
<td>secreted</td>
<td>GCCACCCGACTACCCCTGTTCAAGAAG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA6</td>
<td>54251</td>
<td>secreted</td>
<td>GCCACCCGACTACCCCTGTTCAAGAAG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA7</td>
<td>42574</td>
<td>secreted</td>
<td>GCCACCCGACTACCCCTGTTCAAGAAG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bCA4 (PtCA1)</td>
<td>42406</td>
<td>plastid</td>
<td>GCCACCCGACTACCCCTGTTCAAGAAG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bCA5 (PtCA2)</td>
<td>45443</td>
<td>secreted</td>
<td>GCCACCCGACTACCCCTGTTCAAGAAG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PGAM_1</td>
<td>42857</td>
<td>plastid</td>
<td>GCCACCCGACTACCCCTGTTCAAGAAG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PGAM_2</td>
<td>43253</td>
<td>mitochondria</td>
<td>GCCACCCGACTACCCCTGTTCAAGAAG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PGAM_3</td>
<td>43812</td>
<td>plastid</td>
<td>GCCACCCGACTACCCCTGTTCAAGAAG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PGAM_4</td>
<td>51298</td>
<td>plastid</td>
<td>GCCACCCGACTACCCCTGTTCAAGAAG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PGAM_5</td>
<td>26208</td>
<td>mitochondria</td>
<td>GCCACCCGACTACCCCTGTTCAAGAAG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PGAM_6</td>
<td>33839</td>
<td>mitochondria</td>
<td>GCCACCCGACTACCCCTGTTCAAGAAG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PGAM_7</td>
<td>35164</td>
<td>mitochondria</td>
<td>GCCACCCGACTACCCCTGTTCAAGAAG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protein</td>
<td>Accession</td>
<td>Location</td>
<td>5' UTR</td>
<td>3' UTR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glycine decarboxylase</td>
<td>GDCP</td>
<td>mitochondria</td>
<td>GCTATGGCTTTGGAGATTGCG</td>
<td>GGACGATCCCCACTTCTCATTTG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GDCT_1</td>
<td>56477</td>
<td>mitochondria</td>
<td>TCGAAGCGCAAACACTTCT</td>
<td>GGGAGCTTACGGATTGAGATA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GDCH</td>
<td>32947</td>
<td>mitochondria</td>
<td>TCCATTTGACAAAGGAGTTG</td>
<td>TCGACAGATTCCAGAGATTG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAD Malic enzyme</td>
<td>ME1</td>
<td>mitochondria</td>
<td>TCGATTGACACATCCATTGC</td>
<td>TCGACATGAGCTTCTTACGA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glycolate oxidase/glycolate dehydrogenase</td>
<td>GOX1</td>
<td>peroxisome</td>
<td>GATGCCCTTGCTGCTGTA</td>
<td>CCGGATACATGAGCTTCTTC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GOX2</td>
<td>50804</td>
<td>mitochondria</td>
<td>CAAGGACGGTTATTCGGAAAT</td>
<td>TGTGACGTCTGGCAAGAA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RubisCo small subunit</td>
<td>rbcS</td>
<td>plastid</td>
<td>TGGTTAGGTTACTGAAAGTGT</td>
<td>AAGCAATACGACGACCTCAAGT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RubisCo large subunit</td>
<td>rbcL</td>
<td>plastid</td>
<td>TTGGGCGGCTGATAATGA</td>
<td>AAAAACGGAATGTTGATACATGA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-deoxy-7-phosphohexulose synthase</td>
<td>AroA</td>
<td>plastid</td>
<td>CAGGCCTGGAATTGGACTT</td>
<td>GAAACGGAAGCAGCTGCA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-dehydroquinate synthase</td>
<td>AroB</td>
<td>plastid</td>
<td>CTTTGAGGCGAGGCTT</td>
<td>AAGATCGGTTATGGCGAA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shikimate/quininate 3-dehydrogenase</td>
<td>AT3G*</td>
<td>cytosol</td>
<td>GCCAGAGTCCCGTTATTCG</td>
<td>CGGCATTGCTGAAACATAAT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shikimate kinase</td>
<td>SK*</td>
<td>plastid</td>
<td>ATCGAAGAGGAAAACATGAC</td>
<td>GTCCAAAACCTTGCCCTCA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3-phosphoshikimate 1-carboxyvinyltransferase</td>
<td>EPSP*</td>
<td>plastid</td>
<td>TCCCTGTTCAATCCTCTGA</td>
<td>CAAATGTCGTCGATTCAAG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chorismate synthase</td>
<td>AT1G*</td>
<td>plastid</td>
<td>TGGAGAGGAGAGCCCTTGG</td>
<td>GGTCCTGGAATACGCTGA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acetyl-CoA carboxylase</td>
<td>ACC1</td>
<td>plastid</td>
<td>CATGGACGAGGGATGTCG</td>
<td>TTAATCTGGTCCACACCAAG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACC2</td>
<td>55209</td>
<td>plastid</td>
<td>ACGGAGACATCCAAATACG</td>
<td>TCTCCGCGCAGAAATGTATC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pyruvate dehydrogenase</td>
<td>PDH1</td>
<td>mitochondrial precursor</td>
<td>CAGGGTCACCTTTACCCCGT</td>
<td>CGCCCAAGGCTTTTCTT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDHA1</td>
<td>55035</td>
<td>mitochondrial precursor</td>
<td>TGGCGGCTGTTGACTCTGA</td>
<td>CGGCTGCTGTGCTCACA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDHB</td>
<td>20183</td>
<td>mitochondrial precursor</td>
<td>ACGCGACCTATTCTCTCTTC</td>
<td>TCCACGAGATACGGCTTTTT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glycosyl transferase</td>
<td>BGS1</td>
<td>cytosol</td>
<td>CTTTGCCAAAGACCTTCT</td>
<td>GGTGACATAGTGAGACGGATA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Supplemental data 3.7: An integrated model for central carbon metabolism in *Phaeodactylum tricornutum*

Figure 3.7. Simplified overview of central carbon metabolism and photorespiration in *Phaeodactylum tricornutum*.

3PG: 3-phospho-D-glycerate; GAP: D-glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate; PEP: phosphoenolpyruvate; OAA: oxaloacetate; A-CoA: acetyl-CoA; G6P: D-glucose-6-phosphate. For the full name of the genes, see the Supplemental Table 3.6.
Supplemental data 3.8: Heatmap of up or down-regulated genes under different light intensities

Figure 3.8. Dysregulated heatmap showing the expression pattern of 74 genes related to 8 pathways, with the greatest differences in expression (red: high, green: low). Columns represent relative (to phase 1) changes in the expression of genes in phase 2 or phase 3 under low light (LL) medium light (ML) and high light (HL).
Conclusion of part 1

The availability of the *Phaeodactylum tricornutum* genome database (Bowler et al. 2008) allowed the building of a new cellular model of the carbon metabolism (Figure 3.7). This model has been used to envision the capability of the diatom to respond to different light intensities. This enabled the investigation to assess not only lipid accumulation processes but also competing pathways with lipid synthesis. In this study, in most cases, the enzymes acting within the same pathway had the same directionality indicating a coordinated gene regulation and directed control. Results were both anticipated and surprising.

Generally, diatom cells could adapt to different light conditions in efficient ways to keep cell growth, processes and regulation. Growth rate and generation time under LL was less than ML and HL that showed the intensity of light was a limiting factor for cell mitosis frequency under LL. Anyway, with either fast or slow growth rate, cells faced C depletion in the medium and it was mostly responsible to reach plateau phase, while there was no N deficiency. Both elements are used to synthesize lipids, proteins or carbohydrates. Interestingly, in different growth phase and under different light intensities, strategy of the cells varied according to the accumulation of these molecules. For instance, lipid proportion was higher under LL phase 1, while under ML and HL it was very low. Also, cell C content ($Q_c$) under LL was either close or higher than ML and HL, while C uptake was lower. We concluded that because of low cell division rate (as a consequence of low light energy) under LL, the need of C import inside cells was lower then under the two other lights. Consequently more C was available in the cell environment and could be used for lipid accumulation, while fast cell division under ML and HL, require energy and most of the C are used to generate ATP to maintain growth rate. Lipid proportion increased under ML during phase 2 and 3, compare to LL and HL. Carbohydrates and proteins were the most abundant type of compounds under LL and HL, respectively.

In most cases, enzymes of the different pathways had coordinated gene regulation. In each growth phase, some genes/isogenes were the most responsible to direct the synthesis of intermediates to the final target, *i.e.* secondary compounds. For instance under LL phase 1, up-regulation of GAPDH, GAPC1 (key enzyme for lipid synthesis), PGAM1, PGAM4 and PK1 oriented the direction of pathways toward lipid synthesis, while these genes were mostly downexpressed under ML and HL (Figure 3.9). The activity of these genes varied by aging the culture, according to the growth condition, and they are up-regulated under ML in phase 2, resulting an increase in lipid synthesis in this condition. Of course many interactions between enzymes activity in different pathways and growth condition participate to orient carbon to different pathways including lipid synthesis. Indeed, it has been reported that CO$_2$ concentration affects metabolic and gene regulation, suggesting that exposing the cells to elevated CO$_2$  first
causes a shift in regulation of genes, and then a metabolic rearrangement (Hennon et al. 2015). In the study performed on the diatom *Thalassiosira pseudonana*, this organism rapidly responded to the increase of CO$_2$ by down expression of genes required for energy producing metabolic pathways, including photosynthesis and respiration, suggesting a general reduction in metabolism under high CO$_2$ (Hennon et al. 2015).

In our case, *P. tricornutm* faced CO$_2$ depletion condition by aging the culture and an up-regulation of some genes encoding enzymes involved in carbon concentration mechanism (CCM), including PYC1 and PEPCK was observed in phase 2 and even higher in phase 3 under ML and HL (Supplemental Figure 3.8). These results seemed complementary from those obtained with *T. pseudonanna* (Hennon et al. 2015).

The complexity of the interactions many enzymes and genes working in a huge network composed by related but different interacting pathways makes difficult to draw very precised conclusions without complementary ‘omics’ approaches such as proteomics and metabolomics. Interestingly but surprisingly, we observed a common point in all light levels that was orientation of mRNA transcription toward the synthesis of pyruvate and in some cases in the reverse direction to PEP. Pyruvate is a marshal point for the synthesis of high value molecules including lipids, proteins, carbohydrates, etc. PEP is the intermediate feeding this marshall point and serve also as a key intermediate to the synthesis of aromatic compounds such as aromatic amino acids. Our results confirm the previous conclusion about the existence of a pyruvate hub in microalgae (Smith et al. 2012; Shtaida et al. 2015) and also shows that reorientation of carbon metabolism might occur according to the environmental condition. For instance, under HL phase 3, in addition of carbon direction to pyruvate, reorientation of carbon toward PEP synthesis was also observed, parallelly with up-regulation of genes encoding enzymes of the shikimate pathway including AroA, AroB and SK that shows activation of this pathway. As in each light condition, PEP is even more synthesized by aging the cells; it seems that reorientation of carbon to PEP is mostly active when carbon availability is limiting in environment. This conclusion opens a very interesting avenue for microalga biotechnology aiming to produce secondary compounds. We believe that the results presented here are complementary of the few available data about the global responses of diatoms (Allen et al. 2008; Valuenza et al. 2012, Fernie et al. 2012; Marchetti, et al. 2012; Shrestha et al. 2012) to environmental or biotic factors, including the response to light. These information are needed to better understand the activity and the regulation of enzymes and intermediates participating along the routes and, to go further, to determine a model in diatom from capturing CO$_2$ to the synthesis of high value molecules, such as fatty acids, proteins, chrysolaminarin through the reorientation of the carbon metabolism toward the production of secondary metabolites.

Physiological and molecular data showed that the impact of ML and HL on diatom cells were similar but quite different from LL. This conclusion may seem contradictory
but ultimately predictable because the sampling plan favored the comparison of samples in the same physiological state. It is a very important point in this work because (i) it validates a *posteriori*, the experimental hypothesis that at the chosen sampling times, the cells were in similar physiological states independently of the growth light intensity and (ii) it gives guarantee to the modifications that have been observed at the molecular level, *i.e.* they are mostly reflecting the impact of the light intensity on the cells and are just not due to cells being in completely different physiological states. To strengthen the aspect ‘comparison of cells in the same physiological status’, this experiment could have been performed using a set of photobioreactors, each of them working in a definite condition corresponding to those existing when algae were sampled. Unfortunately, such a possibility did not exist in our lab and anyway, it would have been a very much timeconsuming experiments. Nevertheless, we would recommend the use of such a culture method if complementary experiments have to be realized.

**References**


Part II

The impact of light and mycorrhizal endosymbiosis in secondary compound regulation of land plant (*Mentha* sp.)
Plants are nonmotile organisms that have to constantly deal with changes in a wide range of abiotic and biotic factors in their immediate environment on a seasonal as well as daily basis. Along evolution, plants have acquired several defense mechanisms to cope with modifications of their abiotic environment such as light and/or with modifications of their biotic environment such as the colonization of their root by a symbiotic fungus. Both types of stress can induce carbon metabolism reorientation.

To better understand the mechanisms underlying this phenomenon, I first collected mint accessions in different regions of Iran, including warm and cold climates and determined their ability to be mycorrhized in their natural environment (Chapter 5). Then the capacity of light intensity and quality to modify the growth, development and EO production of the collected accession was tested using growth chamber equipped with different LED panels or fluorescent tubes. A comparison with plants grown in the field was also performed (Chapter 7). To determine whether abiotic and biotic stress can be combined to enhance EO production, mycorrhized plants were grown under different monochromatic and white lights delivered by LED panel. The results are presented in chapter 8. Chapter 6, which reviews the effects of monochromatic irradiation on growth and reorientation of carbon metabolism toward the production of secondary compounds in land plants and algae, serves as introduction for chapters 7 and 8.
Isoprenoid biosynthesis in higher plants and green algae under normal and light stress conditions

Parisa Heydarizadeh\textsuperscript{a,b}, Justine Marchand\textsuperscript{a}, Mohammad R. Sabzialian\textsuperscript{b}, Martine Bertrand\textsuperscript{c} and Benoît Schoefs\textsuperscript{a}\textsuperscript{*}

\textsuperscript{a}MicroMar, Mer Molécules Santé, LUNAM, IUM FR 3473 CNRS, University of Le Mans, Le Mans, France
\textsuperscript{b}Department of Agronomy and Plant Breeding, College of Agriculture, Isfahan University of Technology, Isfahan, Iran
\textsuperscript{c}MiMeTox, Microorganisms Metals and Toxicity INTECHMER – CNAM, BP324, F50103 Cherbourg Cedex, France.

* Corresponding author
e-mail: benoit.schoefs@univ-lemans.fr
Tel: +33 2 43 83 37 72
fax: +33 2 43 83 39 17


4.1 Abstract

The isoprenoids, also called terpenoids, encompass more than 40 000 structures and consist of the largest class of metabolites in photosynthetic organisms. In bacteria and higher plants, the isoprenoid building units are formed through two pathways: the mevalonate pathway, which is localized in the cytosol and operates through the participation of six key enzymes and the 2-C-methyl-D-erythritol-4-phosphate pathway, which is localized in plastids and requires eight consecutive enzymes. The mevalonate pathway in single cell organisms of green algae, such as \textit{Chlorella}, \textit{Scenedesmus} and \textit{Trebouxia} has been lost. Sesquiterpenes, triterpenes and homoterpenes are synthesized \textit{via} the mevalonate pathway, while carotenoids, phytol, chlorophyll side chain, gibberellins, lutein, essential oil and abscisic acid are synthesized \textit{via} the 2-C-methyl-D-erythritol-4-phosphate pathway. Well-known isoprenoids including menthol and carotenoids are synthesized by condensation of the two active isoprenoid Cs-units: IPP and DMAPP. (-)-Menthol biosynthesis requires eight enzymatic steps and all of the genes from GPP to menthol have been identified and characterized, except for isopulegone isomerase. So far, more than 20 different carotenogenesis enzymes have been cloned.
from various organisms. The genes for almost all the enzymes, from the early steps of the isoprenoid pathway to the predominant xanthophylls, have been cloned. Almost all of isoprenoids are important for ameliorating abiotic stresses. They may increase the tolerance of leaves to transiently high temperatures and may also quench ozone and ROS levels inside leaves. Stress conditions may shift significant increase or decrease in enzymes activity in each pathway. Menthofuran is considered a stress metabolite in menthol biosynthesis pathway, catalyzed by menthofuran synthase from pulegone. The level of menthofuran and pulegone should be reduced to improve essential oil quality. Lycopene is an important intermediate in carotenogenesis pathway. In addition, this pathway involves two key enzymes, phytoene synthase and β-carotene hydroxylase. Most of the enzymes and genes related to carotenogenesis pathway have been identified in cyanobacteria and higher plants, but some of them are not found especially in algal species. Increase in isoprenoids yield and improvement in their composition could be attained by transgenic manipulation and to reach to this goal, it is necessary to understand metabolite trafficking and secretion processes.

4.2 Abbreviations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DOXP</td>
<td>1-deoxy-D-xylulose 5-phosphate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEP</td>
<td>2-C-methyl-D-erythritol-4-phosphate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDPME</td>
<td>4-diphosphocytidyl-2-C-methylerythritol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CDPME2P</td>
<td>4-diphosphocytidyl-2-C-methyl-D-erythritol-2-phosphate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEcPP</td>
<td>2-C-methyl-D-erythritol 2,4-cyclopyrophosphate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HMBPP</td>
<td>(E)-4-Hydroxy-3-methyl-but-2-enyl pyrophosphate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GA3P</td>
<td>glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DXS</td>
<td>DOXP synthase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DXR</td>
<td>DOXP reductoisomerase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMS</td>
<td>CDP-ME synthase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMK</td>
<td>CDP-ME kinase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MCS</td>
<td>ME-cPP synthase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDS</td>
<td>HMBPP synthase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IDS</td>
<td>IPP/DMAPP synthase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IDI</td>
<td>isopentenyl/dimethylallyl diphosphate isomerase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPP</td>
<td>isopentenyl diphosphate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DMAPP</td>
<td>dimethylallyl diphosphate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPP</td>
<td>geranyl diphosphate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FPP</td>
<td>farnesyl diphosphate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GGPP</td>
<td>geranylgeranyl diphosphate/pyrophosphate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AC</td>
<td>acetyl-CoA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AAC</td>
<td>acetoacetyl-CoA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.3 Introduction

Based on their function, plant metabolites are classified into two groups: (1) primary metabolites such as carbohydrates, sterols, carotenoids, growth regulators, the polyprenol substituents of dolichols, quinines, and proteins participating in nutrition and essential metabolic processes within the plants and (2) secondary metabolites including substances in chemical defenses against herbivores and pathogens, which influence on ecological interactions between plants and their environment (Chappell 1995, 2002; Croteau et al. 2000). Secondary metabolites of the isoprenoid group constitute the most diverse family of natural products present in all living organisms, which to date have more than 40,000 identified compounds (Bohlmann & Keeling 2008; Dudareva et al. 2013). In addition, this family of compounds constitutes the most abundant biogenic volatile organic compounds in plants. The rate of emission in these compounds is estimated to be more than $1 \times 10^{12}$ kg per year and has important role in plant growth, development, and general metabolism (Croteau et al. 2000; Guenther et al. 2006; Bohlmann & Keeling, 2008; Xing et al. 2010). The isoprenoid compounds consist of hemiterpenes (C5; e.g. isoprene), monoterpenes (C10; e.g. menthol), sesquiterpenes (C15; e.g. farnesol, bisabolol), diterpenes (C20; e.g. camphorene, taxol, ginkgolides), triterpenes (C30; e.g. oleanandric acid), tetraterpenes (C40; e.g. lutein, β-carotene and secondary carotenoids such as astaxanthin), and polyterpenes (C5H8)n (Lichtenthaler 2010). They may be lipophilic or hydrophilic, volatile or nonvolatile, cyclic or acyclic, and chiral or achiral (Bohlmann & Keeling 2008). They serve in a variety of different functions in basic and specialized metabolism and they have a variety of roles in mediating antagonistic and beneficial interactions among organisms. They protect many species of plants, animals, and microorganisms against predators, pathogens, competitors, and environmental stresses (Gershenzon & Dudareva, 2007; Lohr et al. 2012).

For many years, it was accepted that in all organisms, isoprenoids are synthesized through the MVA pathway, and a few years ago, an alternative pathway for the
biosynthesis of IPP (and DMAPP) was identified. This novel pathway, known as the MEP pathway, is widely distributed in nature and is present even in most eubacteria (Rodríguez-Concepción & Boronat, 2013). Depending on the biotic and abiotic stress factor(s), either the MVA or the MEP pathway contributes to the biosynthesis of specific isoprenoids (Lohr et al. 2012). Almost all biotic and abiotic stress factors are able to affect isoprenoid biosynthesis and emission. Because abiotic stresses inhibit photosynthesis and volatile isoprenoids are mainly formed by the carbon directly derived from photosynthetic carbon metabolism, a concurrent negative effect of abiotic stresses on photosynthesis and isoprenoids emission would be expected. However, abiotic stresses could also stimulate biosynthesis and emission of constitutive isoprenoids (Fineschi & Loreto, 2012). The primary aim of the present chapter is to review and compare the occurrence, variation, and function of isoprenoid and carotenoid biosynthesis pathways in higher plants and green algae species under normal and light-stressed conditions and finding the key genes and enzymes associated with their biosynthesis.

4.4 Biosynthesis of isoprenoids

4.4.1 Toward GPP Biosynthesis

Despite their diversity, isoprenoids derive from the condensation of the five-carbon compounds IPP and its allylic isomer, DMAPP (Mahmoud & Croteau, 2001; Vranová et al. 2013; Xiang et al. 2013). The biosynthesis of IPP was first investigated by Konrad Bloch and Feodor Lynen in 1958 using animals and yeast as models (Spurgeon & Porter, 1981; Lichtenthaler et al. 1997; Lichtenthaler 1999), indicating that IPP and DMAPP are biosynthetically derived from MVA, a six-carbon compound. Actually, MVA is a cytosolic pathway (Figure 4.1), which starts with three acetyl-CoA and produces IPP for sterols, triterpenes, sesquiterpenes, polyterpenes, dolichol, brassinosteroids, and isoprenyl groups (Sauret-Güeto et al. 2006; Gunatilaka 2012). This pathway operates through the participation of six key enzymes and requires three ATP and two NADPH molecules to reach to the end products, IPP and its isomer DMAPP (Lichtenthaler 2010). The related enzymes have been found in higher plants (Bach et al. 1999), animals (Rodwell et al. 2000), archaea, fungi (Lombard & Moreira, 2011), and bacteria (Miziołko 2011; Takaichi 2011). Despite the fact that terrestrial plants and green algae have a common evolutionary ancestry (Delaux et al. 2013), it is accepted that the MVA pathway is generally absent in the common ancestor, Chlorophyta. In higher plants and green algae, however, the pathway has not been fully identified yet in detail (Grauvogel & Petersen, 2007; Lohr et al. 2012).

In 1990s, an alternative MVA-independent pathway was detected by labeling experimental material using 13C-labeled glucose isotopomers in plants and bacteria (Flesch & Rohmer, 1988; Rohmer et al. 1993) and the first proof for the presence of MEP pathway was obtained (Schwarz & Arigoni, 1999; Zhao et al. 2013). This detection
demonstrated that there are two isoprenoid biosynthesis pathways in cyanobacteria, higher plants, several green algae (Chlorophyceae has only the MEP pathway), and some bacteria (Lichtenthaler et al. 1997; Zeidler et al. 1997; Lichtenthaler 1998, 1999, 2010; Disch et al. 1998). The two pathways are localized in different compartments: the classical acetate/MVA pathway is in the cytosol and the MEP pathway in plastids. The two pathways are linked through exchange of metabolic precursors across the plastid envelopes, and it has been demonstrated that the transport of isoprenoid constituents proceeds exclusively in the chloroplast-to-cytosol direction, the reverse direction occurring at extremely slow rates (Vickers et al. 2009; Lichtenthaler 2010).

The non-mevalonate pathway occurs in plastids and requires eight consecutive enzymes to produce IPP and DMAPP, universal basic blocks for isoprenoid biosynthesis. This pathway is initiated by a head-to-head condensation of GA-3P and pyruvate (carbon 2 and 3) to DOXP that is catalyzed by DXS and is already known as an intermediate not only for the biosynthesis of IPP and DMAPP but also for thiamin and pyridoxol biosynthesis (Julliard & Douce, 1991; Julliard 1992). The gene encoding DXS, \( \text{dxs} \), have been isolated from \textit{Escherichia coli} (Sprenger et al. 1997; Lois et al. 1998), \textit{Chlamydomonas} (Lichtenthaler 1999), and various plant species including \textit{Mentha piperita}, \textit{Arabidopsis thaliana}, and \textit{Catharanthus roseus} (Bouvier et al. 1998; Lange et al. 1998) but were absent in animals and yeast genomes (Rodríguez-Concepción & Boronat, 2002; Shanker Dubey et al. 2003). Actually, the DXS enzyme seems to be coded by two or three genes in \textit{A. thaliana} (Araki et al. 2000), \textit{Zea mays} (Cordoba et al. 2009, 2011), \textit{Oryza sativa} (Kim et al. 2005), \textit{Medicago truncatula} (Walter et al. 2000, 2002), \textit{Ginkgo biloba} (Kim et al. 2006), and \textit{Pinus densiflora} (Kim et al. 2009). The enzyme requires thiamine diphosphate and divalent cations such as Mg\(^{2+}\) or Mn\(^{2+}\) for its activity (Bouvier et al. 1998; Lange et al. 1998; Estévez et al. 2000; Lois et al. 2000; Shanker Dubey et al. 2003). Several experiments have reported that DXS plays a critical role in the synthesis of IPP and DMAPP (Lois et al. 2000; Gong et al. 2006; Morris et al. 2006).

Increasing or decreasing the level of different final isoprenoid products (between twofold and sevenfold) including chlorophyll, carotenoids, tocopherols, and ABA in transgenic plants expressing higher (overexpression) or lower (antisense) DXS levels supports the rate-limiting function of DXS enzyme in this pathway in plants and shows accumulation of numerous isoprenoid products in the cell (Lois et al. 2000; Estévez et al. 2001; Shanker Dubey et al. 2003; Gong et al. 2006; Morris et al. 2006).

In the second step of the pathway, DOXP is converted to MEP by DXR in the presence of NADPH. DXR is the key enzyme of the pathway and has also rate-limiting roles in IPP and DMAPP biosynthesis (Veau et al. 2000; Mahmoud & Croteau, 2001; Carretero-Paulet et al. 2006). In transgenic peppermint (\textit{M. piperita}), overexpressing DXR led to an increase in essential oil monoterpenes in leaf tissues compared to the wild type (Mahmoud & Croteau, 2001; Shanker Dubey et al. 2003). The related gene, \( \text{ispC} \) (formerly designated \textit{yaeM} or \textit{dxr}), was first isolated from \textit{E. coli} (Takahashi et al. 1998). Homologous proteins have been also reported from plants, algae, bacteria, and the protozoa, \textit{Plasmodium falciparum} (Lange & Croteau, 1999a; Eisenreich et al. 2004;
Matsuzaki et al. 2008). The enzyme uses Mg\textsuperscript{2+} or Mn\textsuperscript{2+} as cofactor and is inhibited by fosmidomycin (FSM), an herbicidal substance that inhibits plant carotenoid, phytol, and isoprenoid biosynthesis (White 1978; Zeidler et al. 1998; Lange & Croteau, 1999a; Fellermeier et al. 1999; Lichtenthaler 2000; Eisenreich et al. 2004). The final result is the bleached phenotype and the failure of seedling establishment (Zeidler et al. 1998; Carretero-Paulet et al. 2002, 2006).

Figure 4.1. Metabolic pathways of the two independent isoprenoid biosynthesis pathways in the plant cell. (Adapted from Lichtenthaler, H.K., Annu. Rev. Plant Physiol. Plant Mol. Biol., 50, 47, 1999.)

Treatment of unicellular green alga, *Dunaliella salina*, with FSM resulted in the suppression of biosynthesis of C5 units, carotenoids, β-carotene, and chlorophyll. There is less information regarding whether the isoprenoid pathway in other algae can be influenced by selective inhibitors, such as mevinolin and FSM, or not (Paniagua-Michel et al. 2009).
The further step in the pathway contains the conversion of MEP to CDP-ME by CMS in the presence of cytidine triphosphate (CTP). The enzyme has essential role for IPP and DMAPP biosynthesis (Herz et al. 2000). The gene encoding the enzyme in *E. coli* was named *ygbP* and later was renamed as *ispD* (Eisenreich et al. 2004). In plants, the related gene was first cloned from *A. thaliana* (Rohdich et al. 2000a; Shanker Dubey et al. 2003). The similar enzyme in *E. coli* uses Mg$_2^+$, Mn$_2^+$, and CO$_2^+$ ions as cofactor, whereas the plant enzyme usually uses Ni$_2^+$ ions (Eisenreich et al. 2004). In *Arabidopsis*, the enzyme requires a divalent cation, preferably Mg$_2^+$ (Rohdich et al. 2000a).

The next step of the pathway is the phosphorylation of the 2-hydroxyl group of CDP-ME into CDP-ME2P by the CMK enzyme in the presence of adenosine triphosphate (ATP). In isolated chromoplast of *Capsicum annuum*, 14C-labeled CDP-ME (the substrate for CMK) was efficiently converted into carotenoids, suggesting the possible role of the enzyme in carotenoid biosynthesis (Shanker Dubey et al. 2003). CMK requires Mg$_2^+$ as cofactor (Eisenreich et al. 2004).

The fifth step of the pathway is the formation of ME-cPP under the release of CMP. The reaction is catalyzed by MCS. The gene encoding such enzyme in *E. coli* was named *ygbB* (renamed as *ispF*) and has many putative orthologues in eubacteria as well as in *A. thaliana* (Herz et al. 2000), which require Mn$_2^+$ or Mg$_2^+$ as cofactor (Eisenreich et al. 2004). The sixth step in the pathway is the conversion of ME-cPP to HMBPP in the presence of NADPH (Rodríguez-Concepción & Boronat, 2002; Shanker Dubey et al. 2003) by the enzyme HDS (Rodríguez-Concepción & Boronat, 2002). The *E. coli* gene coding HDS annotated as *gcpE* (*ispG*) is conserved in plants, algae, and eubacteria but is absent in archaeabacteria, yeast, and animal genomes (Rodríguez-Concepción & Boronat, 2002; Matsuzaki et al. 2008). The terminal step is the conversion of HMBPP into a 5:1 mixture of IPP and its isomer, DMAPP. The *lytB* gene (renamed as *ispH*) appears to encode the IDS (Rodríguez-Concepción et al. 2000, 2002) and causes the branching in which IPP and DMAPP are generated sequentially and this biochemical activity is an important difference between MVA and non-MVA pathways (Figure 4.1) (Charon et al. 2000; Rodríguez-Concepción et al. 2000, 2002).

In general, the chromosomal replacement study has revealed that in the MEP pathway, (1) the *dxs* gene has the highest impact among other isoprenoid genes on carotenoid production, (2) the *IPi* gene plays a significant role in the isoprenoid biosynthesis, (3) the *ispD* and *ispF* genes appear to form an operon, (4) CMS and MCS are rate-limiting enzymes in the isoprenoid flux, and (5) there are no rate limitations for *ispE*, *ispG*, and *ispH* genes (Das et al. 2007). In *Arabidopsis* and other plants (with some exceptions such as rubber trees), the transcript levels of all genes from the MEP pathway accumulate upon the exposure to light and during the development of the first true leaves of seedlings (Guevara-García et al. 2005; Hsieh et al. 2008). This positive regulation by light provides an advantage during early seedling development, which may elevate the demand for the photosynthetic pigments derived from the pathway (Schoefs et al. 1998; Cordoba et al. 2009).
A pivotal enzyme in monoterpene metabolism is GP\textsubscript{PS}, a member of the short-chain prenyl-transferase family catalyzing the head-to-tail condensation of one IPP and one DAMPP molecules to give rise to GPP. Supply of GPP is critical for terpenoid yield; therefore, studies on the regulation of genes in GPP biosynthesis assume central importance (Rohmer 1993; Croteau et al. 2005; Paniagua-Michel 2009; Clastre et al. 2011; Lohr et al. 2012; Paniagua-Michel et al. 2012). GGPP\textsubscript{S} is a central intermediate in the synthesis of plastidic isoprenoids such as monoterpenes and carotenoids. Other terpenes contain a 15-carbon and 20-carbon backbone synthesized by FPP synthase and GGPP synthase (GGPP\textsubscript{S}), yielding FPP and GGPP, respectively. FPP and GGPP are key substrates for several important branch-point enzymes. In plants, FPP and GGPP are required for the first committed step in the biosynthesis of sesquiterpenes and diterpenes, respectively. Geranylgeranyl diphosphate synthase catalyzes the condensation of three molecules of IPP and one molecule of DMAPP to produce GGPP, a 20-carbon molecule in the carotenoid pathway. Pairwise condensation of FPP and GGPP provides triisoprenoid (C\textsubscript{30}) and tetraisoprenoid (C\textsubscript{40}) biosynthesis. On the other hand, assembly of an undefined number of C5 precursors yields polyisoprenoids (Bohlmann & Keeling, 2008; Gonzales-Vigil et al. 2012). In land plants and green algae, collectively termed Viridiplantae (Latin name for \textit{green plants}), currently, it is clear that the biosynthesis of monoterpenes appears to be localized in plastids. In recent years, our understanding of the numerous facets of isoprenoid metabolism in land plants has been rapidly increasing, while knowledge on the metabolic network of isoprenoids in algae still lags behind (Lohr et al. 2012).

\subsection*{4.4.2 From GPP to menthol biosynthesis}

Terrestrial plants and marine algae produce a variety of secondary metabolites, including monoterpenes. The algal monoterpenes present several highly unusual characteristics, nearly always halogenated, and they possess ring structures quite unusual. There are a few reports suggesting monoterpene emission in algae, and a limited number of field studies suggest that these compounds play a role in the defense of marine algae (Bonsang et al. 1992; Milne et al. 1995; McKay et al. 1996; Wise 2003). Yassaa et al. (2008) have provided the first evidence for marine production of monoterpenes in nine algae species consisting of coccolithophorids, \textit{Emiliania huxleyi}; diatoms, \textit{Chaetoceros neogracilis}, \textit{Chaetoceros debilis}, \textit{Fragilariopsis kerguelensis}, \textit{Phaeodactylum tricornutum}, and \textit{Skeletonema costatum}; chlorophyte, \textit{D. tertiolecta}; and cyanobacteria, \textit{Synechococcus} and \textit{Trichodesmium}. Among the phytoplanktons sampled, green algae species, \textit{D. tertiolecta}, was the strongest emitter of monoterpenes followed by \textit{P. tricornutum}, and nine monoterpenes were identified, namely, (−)/(+)-pinene, myrcene, (+)-camphene, (−)-sabinene, (+)-3-carene, (−)-pinene, (−)-limonene, and p-ocimene. So far, it is not known that emissions by algal cells are a response to biotic (\textit{e.g.} defense against predation) or abiotic (\textit{e.g.} temperature, injury) stresses (Yassaa et al. 2008).
In many types of terrestrial plants, monoisoprenoids are the primary volatile constituents of the essential oils. In the genus *Mentha*, the peppermint (*M. piperita* L.) produces almost exclusively monoterpenes bearing an oxygen function at position C3 such as (−)- or l-menthol, whereas spearmint types such as native spearmint (*M. spicata* L.) and Scotch spearmint (*M. gentilis* var. *cardiaca*) produce almost exclusively monoterpenes bearing an oxygen function at position C6, typified by carvone (Lawrence 1981). The biosynthesis of (−)-menthol has been studied by Croteau and coworkers for more than two decades, and the results were used as a model for biochemical and molecular genetic characterization of monoisoprenoid and essential oil biosynthesis (Croteau et al. 2005). Recently, the main and characteristic component of *M. piperita* essential oil, the monoisoprenoid (−)-menthol, was investigated, and cDNAs have been identified and characterized for all enzymes from GPP to (−)-menthol (Figure 4.2), except for isopulegone isomerase (Turner et al. 2012).

![Diagram of metabolic pathway leading to the synthesis of (−)-menthol and related monoisoprenoids in *Mentha*.](image)

**Figure 4.2.** Metabolic pathway leading to the synthesis of (−)-menthol and related monoisoprenoids in *Mentha.*
The biosynthesis of (−)-menthol from primary metabolism requires eight enzymatic steps and proceeds from GPP. The first committed reaction catalyzes the cyclization of GPP to (−)-limonene by the first committed enzyme of the pathway, (−)-LS, a typical monoterpene cyclase. (−)-Limonene serves as olefinic precursor of essential oil terpenes of both peppermint and spearmint. The subsequent step, (−)-L3OH, using O$_2$ and NADPH, catalyzes the allylic hydroxylation of (−)-limonene at the three positions to form (−)-trans-isopiperitenol. Biosynthetic investigations have demonstrated that (−)-limonene undergoes cytochrome-mediated hydroxylation at C$_3$ to yield (−)-trans-isopiperitenol (peppermint) or at C$_6$ to yield (−)-trans-carveol (spearmint) (Lupien et al. 1999). Typically, carvone accumulates in spearmint and superior oils of peppermint containing high quantities of menthol, moderate amounts of menthone, and low levels of pulegone and menthofuran. The remaining enzymes responsible for the subsequent redox transformations of isopiperitenol to menthol is present in both peppermint and spearmint species; however, carveol is a poor substrate in these processes (Croteau et al. 1991). In a study by Mahmoud et al. (2004), overexpression of L3OH gene resulted in a substantial increase in the limonene content (up to 80% of the essential oil compared to about 2% of the oil in wild-type peppermint) in the essential oil, without influence on oil yield, but simultaneously resulted in a decrease in (−)-menthol yield. According to this result, limonene does not impose a negative feedback suggesting that pathway engineering can be employed to significantly alter essential oil composition without adverse metabolic consequences in peppermint.

For the next step of the pathway, (−)-trans-isopiperitenol is converted to (−)-isopiperitenone by (−)-trans-isopiperitenol dehydrogenase (iPD) that oxidizes the hydroxyl group on the three positions using NAD$^+$ followed by (−)-isopiperitenone reductase (iPR) that catalyzes the reaction with reduction of the double bond between carbons 1 and 2 using NADPH to form (−)-cis-isopulegone. It has been reported that (−)-cis-isopulegone is the key intermediate in the conversion of (−)-isopiperitenone to (−)-pulegone (Park et al. 1993).

The next step of the pathway is isomerization of the remaining double bond to form (−)-pulegone by (−)-cis-iPI and then (−)-PR (isopiperitenone reductase) reduces this double bond using NADPH to form (−)-menthone. At the terminal step of the pathway, (−)-MR (menthone reductase) reduces the carbonyl group using NADPH to form (−)-menthol and (−)-neoisomenthol by (−)-MMR (menthone-menthol reductase) and to (−)-neomenthol and (−)-isomenthol by (−)-MNR (menthone-neomenthol reductase). The latter three monoterpenol isomers are minor constituents of peppermint oil (Croteau et al. 2005). The related enzymes are localized in different parts of the cell. GPPS and LS are localized in the leucoplasts (Turner et al. 1999, Turner and Croteau 2004), limonene 6-hydroxylase (of spearmint) is localized in the endoplasmic reticulum, iPD is found to be mitochondrial, and PR is localized in the cytosol (Turner and Croteau 2004). Both MMR and iPR are also localized in the cytoplasm and nucleoplasm of the secretory cells of peltate glandular trichomes (Turner et al. 2012). There is possibility to alter the composition and volume production of monoterpenes and essential oil quality through

### 4.4.3 Carotenoids

Carotenoids are C_{40} natural fat-soluble, yellow, orange, or sometimes red, isoprenoid pigments and essential components of the photosynthetic apparatus that serve two functions: light harvesting (accessory pigments) or photoprotection of the chlorophyll a molecules in the photosynthetic reaction centers against photo oxidation (Lichtenthaler 2012; Ruiz-Sola & Rodríguez-Concepción, 2012; Xiumin et al. 2012). There are over 750 known structurally defined carotenes that have been identified so far. Carotenoids are also formed in several non-green and nonphotosynthetic organisms, such as yeast, bacteria, and molds, to protect them against damage by light and oxygen (Lichtenthaler 2012; Ruiz-Sola & Rodríguez-Concepción, 2012). They can be synthesized from carotenoid pathway by most organisms except for the animal kingdom that are generally unable to synthesis the components (Moran & Jarvik, 2010; Takaichi, 2011; Lichtenthaler 2012). So far, little is known about the mechanisms that regulate carotenoid biosynthesis (Meier et al. 2011). High carotenoid levels are found in the chloroplasts of photosynthetic tissues, but the highest amounts of carotenoids are found in chromoplasts. Besides chromoplasts, all other plastid types synthesize carotenoids but the level of carotenoid accumulation varies widely among different plastid types (Ruiz-Sola & Rodríguez-Concepción, 2012). Unlike chromoplasts that show highly diverse carotenoids, depending on the organ, species, and genetic varyely, chloroplasts have a remarkably similar carotenoid composition in all plants, with lutein (45% of the total), β-carotene (25%–30%), violaxanthin (10%–15%), and neoxanthin (10%–15%) as the most abundant carotenoids (Britton 1993). Photosynthetic reaction centers are enriched in carotene (β-carotene), whereas xanthophylls are most abundant in the light-harvesting processes (Ruiz-Sola & Rodríguez-Concepción, 2012).

Many different types of carotenoids are extracted from higher plants and algal species. The largest structural variety of carotenoids is encountered in marine environments produced by microscopic and macroscopic algae (Liaaen-Jensen 1991; Mimouni et al. 2012). Approximately, 30 types of carotenoids participate in photosynthesis (primary carotenoids) and others are functional carotenogenesis intermediates (secondary carotenoids).

### 4.4.4 From GPP to secondary carotenoids

The main carotenoid biosynthetic pathway was elucidated in the latter half of the twentieth century using biochemical (from the 1960s) and molecular (from the 1980s) approaches. Major advances in the identification of genes and enzymes of the pathway have been made from the 1990s (Ruiz-Sola & Rodríguez-Concepción, 2012). In
terrestrial plants, most of the carotenogenesis pathways and functionally related enzymes are known, but little is known among algae (Takaichi 2011).

In the large group of green algae, the carotenoid biosynthesis is more complex. Like higher plants, the more advanced evolutionary group of green algae, such as Charales and Zygnematales, possesses both MVA and MEP pathways. In contrast, often single-cell organisms of green algae, such as Chlorella, Scenedesmus, and Trebouxia, represent carotenoid and sterol biosynthesis via the MEP pathway, and the MVA pathway is lost (Lichtenthaler 2010). Despite the importance of these taxa, Haematococcus pluvialis (astaxanthin biosynthesis) and Dunaliella sp. (β-carotene biosynthesis), for the commercial production, most of the studies on secondary carotenoid pathway have been performed by these organisms (Das et al. 2007; Lemoine & Schoefs, 2010; Moulin et al. 2010).

The first committed step in carotenoid biosynthesis is a head-to-head condensation of the two C20 molecules of GGPP by phytoene synthase (PSY) (CrtB, Psy, Pys) to form phytoene (Figure 4.1). GGPP is also the precursor for several other groups of metabolites, including chlorophyll and tocopherol. PSY is a major rate-controlling carotenoid enzyme at unknown plastid sites, either in plastoglobuli or in stroma and thylakoid membranes (Shumskaya et al. 2012). The green algae Ostreococcus and Micromonas possess two orthologous copies of the PSY genes, possibly indicating an ancient gene duplication event. In contrast, higher plants possess only one class of the PSY gene and the other gene copy is lost (Tran et al. 2009). For the next step in the pathway, phytoene undergoes four sequential reactions to form lycopene (Farré et al. 2010; Walter & Strack, 2011). This route requires three enzymes including phytoene desaturase (PDS) (CrtP, Pds), ζ-carotene desaturase (CrtQ, Zds), and cis-carotene isomerase (CrtH, CrtISO). In higher plants and green algae, α-carotene, β-carotene, and their derivatives are derived from lycopene (Figure 4.3).

In the next step, the carotenoid pathway has branches at the cyclization reaction to produce carotenoids with either two β-rings (such as β-carotene and its derivatives) or one ε- and one β-ring (such as α-carotene and lutein) (Figure 4.3). Inability of the lycopene ε-cyclase enzyme (LCYe) to add two ε-rings to the symmetrical lycopene is the cause of the absence of a branch leading to carotenoids with two ε-rings in most plants (except lettuce) (Cunningham 2002). Plants contain two CrtL lycopene cyclases (LCYs), lycopene ε-cyclase (CrtL-e, LCYe) and lycopene β-cyclase (CrtL-b, LCYB), that form enzymatic products of α-carotene and β-carotene. Lutein and zeaxanthin are generated by the hydroxylation of these two carotenoids, respectively. Their function is light harvesting within the antenna of photosystems I and II (PSI and PSII) (Sheen 1991; Bradbury et al. 2012).

In the absence of stress, hydroxyl groups are introduced into β-carotene to produce zeaxanthin by β-carotene hydrolase (CrtR, CrtR-b, BCH), and zeaxanthin epoxidase (Zep, NPQ) is responsible for producing violaxanthin through antheraxanthin, in both higher plants and algae. Epoxidases, such as violaxanthin and zeaxanthin, are more common among algal carotenoids (Liaaen-Jensen 1991). The first Zep cDNA was identified from
tobacco (*Nicotiana plumbaginifolia*) and was named as ABA2 (Marin et al. 1996). Under light stress and with the development of a high-pH gradient across the thylakoids, the reaction is different, and the two steps of mono-de-epoxidation reactions of the violaxanthin into zeaxanthin with antheraxanthin as an intermediate are catalyzed by violaxanthin de-epoxidase (Vde) in order to dissipate the excess energy in the form of heat from excited chlorophylls (Takaichi 2011). The first sequenced cDNA of Vde was obtained from romaine lettuce (*Lactuca sativa* L.), and the homologous genes were sequenced in the genome of diatoms *Thalassiosira pseudonana* and *P. tricornutum*. So far, most of the carotenogenesis enzymes and genes have been found in cyanobacteria (Takaichi & Mochimaru, 2007), diatoms (Bertrand 2010), green algae (Lemoine & Schoefs, 2010; Moulin et al. 2010), and higher plants (Frommolt et al. 2008); however, in algal species, some of them have not been found yet (Takaichi 2011). It seems that higher plants and algae have common carotenogenesis pathways, and all of the enzymes and genes related to this pathway are presented in Table 4.1 (for confirmed genes and enzymes in cyanobacteria and algae, see Takaichi 2011). No counterpart of the neoxanthin synthase (*Nsy*) was reported in *A. thaliana* (Cunningham 2002).

![Figure 4.3. Carotenogenesis scheme and confirmed enzymes in higher plants and green algae. The dashed part of graph could be synthesized only in some algae.](image-url)
Major carotenoids in most species of the class of the green algae, Chlorophyta (Prasinophyceae, Chlorophyceae, Ulvophyceae, Trebouxiophyceae, Charophyceae), and land plants consist of β-carotene, violaxanthin, and neoxanthin (Takaichi 2011). Some carotenoids are found only in some classes or divisions of higher plants and algae, and for this reason, they are used as chemotaxonomic markers (Rowan 1989; Liaaen-Jensen 1990). In this respect, green algae including Euglenophyta, Chlorarachniophyta, and Chlorophyta contain the same carotenoids, such as lutein, β-carotene, 9-cis neoxanthin, and violaxanthin (Takaichi 2011). For comparison, tomato (Lycopersicon esculentum Mill.) contains prolycopene, ζ-carotene, β-carotene, or δ-carotene, and carrot (Daucus carota L.) contains xanthophylls, ζ-carotene, β-carotene, δ-carotene, and lycopene (MacKinney & Jenkins, 1949; Buishand & Gabelman, 1980; Ronen et al. 2000).

Carotenoid content pattern can change during the life cycle of plants and algae. The unicellular green alga H. pluvialis, the most suitable source of astaxanthin (of the most important diterpenes), accumulates this antioxidant (up to 4% by dry weight) in response to various environmental stress conditions such as high light intensities, nitrogen limitation, and salt stress in extraplastidic lipid globules as a secondary carotenoids (Boussiba et al. 1999; Boussiba 2000; Grünewald et al. 2001; Schoefs et al. 2001; Lemoine & Schoefs, 2010; Moulin et al. 2010). The massive accumulation of astaxanthin occurs during cyst cell formation, whereas in green vegetative phase and without stress condition, zeaxanthin accumulation occurs (Vidhyavathi et al. 2008). In red pepper (Ca. annuum L.) when ripening is started, chloroplast pigments, lutein, and neoxanthin are decreased, whereas β-carotene and antheraxanthin are increased (Hornero-Mendez et al. 2000).

4.5 Isoprenoid protection against diverse stresses

Almost all of isoprenoids have the ability to increase the tolerance of leaves to transiently high temperatures and light stress, and they may also quench ozone and ROS levels inside the leaves (Loreto & Velikova, 2001; Sharkey et al. 2001; Behnke et al. 2007; Loreto & Fares, 2007; Vickers et al. 2009; Lohr et al. 2012). They also reduce the formation of nitric oxide in the mesophyll and could modulate the signaling of defense-induced biosynthetic pathways (Velikova et al. 2005). Among the 100,000 chemical products that are known to be produced by plants, at least 1700 of these are known to be volatile isoprenoids. Two of the most important functions of volatile isoprenoids are protections of plant tissues from thermal and oxidative stresses (Behnke et al. 2007; Loivamäki et al. 2007; Spinelli et al. 2011). There are key dissipation processes and mechanisms for the resistance to excess energy and the other environmental stresses, which are mediated by a particular group of carotenoids. Monoterpene emission is equivalent to 1%-2% of photosynthetic carbon fixation (Sharkey & Yeh, 2001). Some enzymes positioned at key points in metabolic pathways are ideal candidates for regulation, as their activity can affect the output of the entire pathways. These enzymes typically share two characteristics: they catalyze (1) reactions far from equilibrium and
(2) early committed steps in the pathways. For instance, in menthol pathway and during stressful conditions, an important diversion from the pathway to menthol is the transformation of (+)-pulegone to menthofuran catalyzed by menthofuran synthase (MFS), and because of this, it is considered as a stress metabolite (Croteau et al. 2005). Together, menthofuran and (+)-pulegone are described as an off odor and accumulate to high levels (15%–20% of the oil) under stress conditions (Croteau et al. 2005; Rios-Estepa et al. 2008). Some carotenoids play similar role(s) during the stress.

4.5.1 Light stress

Menthol and carotenoid biosynthesis involve a series of enzymes that mainly starts from MEP pathway and each alteration in the pathway flux should be observable at the level of products (Mahmoud & Croteau, 2001; Paniagua-Michel et al. 2012). Comparative expression analysis of the MEP pathway genes under various growing conditions shows that transcript accumulation of these genes in plants is modulated by multiple external signals and in a coordinated manner. One signal that impacts strongly the transcript accumulation of several genes in the MEP pathways is light (Cordoba et al. 2009). Studies show that light stress can increase expression of some genes in MEP pathway. For instance, dxs is more expressed under light stress (Kawoosa et al. 2010; Meier et al. 2011). UV-B irradiation may induce upregulation of dxs, gpps, fpps, and lpi genes that are necessary for menthol and carotenoid biosynthesis (Dolzhenko et al. 2010; Lemoine & Schoefs, 2010). Vidhyavathi et al. (2008) also reported that the expression of carotenogenic genes, PSY, PDS, LCY, β-carotene ketolase (BKT), and β-carotene hydroxylase (CHY) were upregulated in green algae, H. pluvialis, under nutrient stress and higher light intensity, and astaxanthin content as a stress metabolite was increased. It is also believed that most plants respond to high light conditions with a 1.4–2-fold increase of xanthophyll cycle carotenoids (violaxanthin, zeaxanthin, neoxanthin), an enhanced operation of the xanthophyll cycle, and an increase of β-carotene levels (Lichtenthaler 2007; Lemoine & Schoefs, 2010).

4.5.1.1 Light stress and menthol biosynthesis

Light quality is an important factor for essential oil production. Menthol biosynthesis in peppermint can be decreased by supplementary blue light (450 nm) because of shifting the carbon flow to (+)-menthofuran production (Maffei & Scannerini, 1999). In addition to visible light, one of the unavoidable stress factors in natural condition of photosynthetic organisms is the exposure to UV-B radiation (280–320 nm). However, isoprenoid production is induced by UV radiation, but not always supplementary UV-B leads to increased isoprenoid production (Dolzhenko et al. 2010). Maffei and Scannerini (2000) reported that additional UV-B light has negative effect on essential oil quality with positive effect on high amounts of (+)-menthofuran. In addition, UV-A radiation (360 nm) affects the composition of peppermint oil by increasing (+)-menthofuran
Table 4.1. Enzymes and genes related to isoprenoid pathways (MEP, menthol biosynthesis, carotenogenesis) whose functions have been confirmed in higher plants and green algae (continued).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pathway</th>
<th>Enzyme name</th>
<th>Gene/Synonym genes</th>
<th>Plant species</th>
<th>References</th>
<th>Green algae species</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEP</td>
<td>Isopentenyl IPi</td>
<td></td>
<td>Arabidopsis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Process</td>
<td>Enzymes</td>
<td>Species</td>
<td>References</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(-)-limonene-3-hydroxylase</td>
<td>L3OH, ER, PM, GL</td>
<td>Turner &amp; Croteau (2004)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(+)-menthofuran synthesis</td>
<td>MFS</td>
<td>Mahmoud &amp; Croteau (2003)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carotenogenesis</td>
<td>Geranylgeranyl</td>
<td>CrtE, ggps</td>
<td>Cunningham (2002)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carotenogenesis</td>
<td>Enzyme Activity</td>
<td>Species</td>
<td>References</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phytoene desaturase</td>
<td>PDS, CRTP, CRTI</td>
<td>Oryza sativa</td>
<td>Frommolt et al (2008)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phytoene desaturase</td>
<td>PDS, CRTP, CRTI</td>
<td>Arabidopsis thaliana</td>
<td>Cunningham (2002)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Phytoene desaturase</td>
<td>PDS, CRTP, CRTI</td>
<td>Lycopersicon esculentum</td>
<td>Cunningham (2002)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ζ-carotene desaturase</td>
<td>ZDS, CRTQ</td>
<td>Arabidopsis thaliana</td>
<td>Cunningham (2002)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lycopene β-cyclase</td>
<td>CRTL-b, CRTL, lcy-b</td>
<td>Arabidopsis thaliana</td>
<td>Cunningham (2002)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carotene isomerase</td>
<td>CrtH/CrtISO</td>
<td>Arabidopsis thaliana</td>
<td>Cunningham (2002)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lycopene ε-cyclase</td>
<td>CrtL-e, LCYe</td>
<td>Arabidopsis thaliana</td>
<td>Cunningham &amp; Gantt (2001)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lycopene ε-cyclase</td>
<td>CrtL-e, LCYe</td>
<td>Solanum lycopersicum</td>
<td>Ronen et al (1999)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lycopene ε-cyclase</td>
<td>CrtL-e, LCYe</td>
<td>Lactuca sativa</td>
<td>Fiore et al (2012)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**References:**
- Steinbrenner & Linden (2003)
- Haematococcus pluvialis NIES-144
- Ostreococcus lucimarinus
- Ostreococcus tauri
- Volvov carteri
- Chlamydomonas reinhardtii
- Chlamydomonas reinhardtii
- Chlorella zofingiensis ATCC 30412
- Haematococcus pluvialis (SAG 19-a)
- Vidhyavathi et al (2008)
- Dunaliella salina CCAP 19/30
- Haematococcus pluvialis NIES-144
- Steinbrenner & Linden (2003)

**Species:**
- Arabidopsis thaliana
- Triticum aestivum
- Hordeum vulgare
- Populus trichocarpa
- Lycopersicon esculentum
- Oryza sativa
- Arabidopsis thaliana
- Lycopersicon esculentum Mill.
- Zea mays
- Solanum lycopersicum
- Arabidopsis thaliana
- Dunaliella salina
- Haematococcus pluvialis NIES-144
- Lactuca sativa
- Volvov carteri
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Carotenogenesis</th>
<th>Enzyme Name</th>
<th>Gene Symbol(s)</th>
<th>Species</th>
<th>References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Carotenogenesis</td>
<td>β-carotene ketolase</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carotenogenesis</td>
<td>Zeaxanthin epoxidase</td>
<td>Zep, npq, ABA</td>
<td>Arabidopsis thaliana</td>
<td>Cunningham (2002)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carotenogenesis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Nicotiana plumbaginifolia</td>
<td>Marin et al 1996</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carotenogenesis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Capsicum annuum</td>
<td>Hieber et al 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carotenogenesis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Lycopeverson esculentum</td>
<td>Hieber et al 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carotenogenesis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Prunus armeniaca</td>
<td>Hieber et al 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carotenogenesis</td>
<td>Violaxanthin de-epoxidase</td>
<td>vde</td>
<td>Arabidopsis thaliana</td>
<td>Cunningham (2002)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Haematococcus pluvialis NIES-144</td>
<td>Steinhbrenner &amp; Linden (2001)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Haematococcus pluvialis NIES-144</td>
<td>Frommolt et al (2008)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Haematococcus pluvialis strain 34/7</td>
<td>Frommolt et al (2008)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Chlamydomonas reinhardtii</td>
<td>Goss (2003)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Lotan &amp; Hirschberg (1995)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
content. UV-B irradiation may induce upregulation of *ipl* and *MR*-genes and also can downregulate the expression of *L3OH* and *TPS* genes (Dolzhenko et al. 2010).

### 4.5.1.2 Light stress and carotenogenesis

In plants, the xanthophyll cycle (the reversible interconversion of two carotenoids, violaxanthin and zeaxanthin) has a key photoprotective role to enhance tolerance to high light but also to other stress conditions, such as nitrogen starvation, which has not been reported previously (Cousoab et al. 2012). The accumulation of β-carotene and zeaxanthin at high photon flux densities has been reported in *A. thaliana*. In this plant, overexpression of the *chyb* gene that encodes CHY, an enzyme in the zeaxanthin biosynthetic pathway, causes a specific twofold increase in the size of the xanthophyll cycle pool. The plants are more tolerant to conditions of high light and high temperature than other organisms. Their stress protection is probably due to the function of zeaxanthin in preventing oxidative damage of membranes (Davison et al. 2002).

In *Chlamydomonas reinhardtii*, the high increase in the transcript levels of the cytochrome-dependent CHY and ε-carotene hydroxylase in response to high light suggests an important role of these enzymes in regulation of xanthophyll synthesis upon light stress (Depka et al. 1998; Cousoab et al. 2012). In *Chlorella*, high-irradiance stress did not increase mRNA levels of neither lycopene β-cyclase gene (*lcy-b*) nor lycopene ε-cyclase gene (*lcy-e*), whereas the transcript levels of *psy*, *pds*, *chyB*, and *bkt* genes were enhanced. Nevertheless, the synthesis of the secondary carotenoids astaxanthin, canthaxanthin, and zeaxanthin was triggered, and the levels of the primary carotenoids α-carotene, lutein, violaxanthin, and β-carotene were decreased (Cordero et al. 2012). In higher plants, LCY plays as key role under high light stress and assists in preventing ROS-dependent damage of DNA, proteins, carbohydrates, and lipids by reducing accumulation of β-carotene-5,6-epoxide (Bradbury et al. 2012).

In green algae, in addition of lycopene as an important intermediate, the carotenogenesis pathway involves two key enzymes, PSY (PSY/CrtB) and CHY (CrtR-b/CHYB). The application of high light intensities in *H. pluvialis* caused a transient increase in CHY mRNA and consequently astaxanthin accumulation (Steinbrenner and Linden 2001). Carotenogenic genes expression in *H. pluvialis* including PSY, PDS, LCY, BKT, and CHY is upregulated under high light (Steinbrenner & Linden, 2001, Vidhyavathi et al. 2008). In the study of Pirastru et al. (2012), *Scenedesmus* sp. was tolerant to the long-term (40 days) high light stress condition due to the production of secondary carotenoids, such as astaxanthin and canthaxanthin. The biosynthesis of these secondary carotenoids was highly induced after the deterioration of PSII complexes when chlorophyll synthesis and cell division were inhibited. In the other study, exposure of *Chlorococcum* to high irradiance caused an increase in the amount of xanthophyll-cycle pigments and in the carotenoid/chlorophyll ratio. As a result of exposure to stress conditions, cell division was completely stopped, although an
increase in the biomass dry weight could be detected due to an increase in the cell size (Masojídek et al. 2000).

*Dunaliella* sp. was exposed to high light intensity (4000 μmol m$^{-2}$ s$^{-1}$) for 2 h and it lost its carotenoid and chlorophyll content up to 20% and 15%, respectively. In contrast, zeaxanthin was increased by approximately 200% (Young & Britton, 1990). In this respect, it seems that carotenes (such as α- and β-carotene) are more sensitive to photobleaching than xanthophylls (such as lutein, zeaxanthin, neoxanthin, violaxanthin, and α- and β-cryptoxanthin), and sensitivity of chlorophyll is ranged between carotenoids and xanthophylls (Siems et al. 2002). In the other report by Chang et al. (2013), *Ch. reinhardtii* was exposed to high light (3000 μmol m$^{-2}$ s$^{-1}$), and carotenoid content was slightly reduced during the first 30 min of illumination and strongly diminished after 60 min. The expression of the transcripts of enzymes involved in carotenoid biosynthesis, including PSY, PDS, and lycopene ε-cyclase (LCYE), initially increased and then decreased. These results suggest that to ameliorate the stress, a reduction in the degree of carotenoid breakdown occurs by activation of *de novo* carotenoid synthesis.

### 4.6 Genetic engineering

Harnessing the powers of plant, algal, and microbial systems for economically valuable isoprenoid production requires extensive research and completely understanding their biosynthesis and genomics, as well as the effect of environmental and stress conditions. Metabolic engineering could enhance plant adaptation to climate change and improve food security and nutritional value. For instance, in transgenic peppermint, by downregulation of the *MFS* gene, lower amount of menthofuran and (+)-pulegone in the oil was produced. This led to an increase in the isoprenoid flux through PR and ultimately more (−)-menthol content (Mahmoud and Croteau 2003). Increasing the other enzymes involved in carotenogenesis pathway, CHY and PSY, has also an important role during stress conditions, such as light stress. Discovery of differential gene products like PSY or CHYB locations linked to activity and isozyme type advances the engineering potential for modifying carotenoid biosynthesis (Shumskaya et al. 2012).

In the recent years, all the genes of menthol biosynthesis pathway have been isolated, cloned, and characterized, but there are still several enzymes such as iPD, iPR, iPI, PR, and MR that need to be explored for their metabolic engineering potential (Dolzhenko et al. 2010). On the other hand, for carotenoid biosynthetic pathway, the catalytic steps have been described, although, the regulatory mechanisms that control carotenoid accumulation remain poorly understood (Lee et al. 2012). With genetic engineering or genetic modification, it is possible to manipulate the characteristics and functions of the original genes of each pathway in organisms. The objective of this process is to introduce new physiological and physical features or characteristics, change the patterns of production, and boost the yield of metabolites including isoprenoid synthesis in plants and microorganisms.
4.7 Conclusion

In conclusion, the MEP pathway of plastid IPP and isoprenoid biosynthesis is well established with its seven main enzymes and corresponding genes, but all of the enzymes and genes related to the pathway and also the physiological roles of isoprenoids are not entirely clear (Sharkey & Yeh, 2001; León & Cordoba, 2013). The regulatory mechanisms employed by plants and algae to adjust the amount and composition of isoprenoids are being revealed. Many of the developmental and regulatory aspects of menthol biosynthesis are known in the Mentha genus. Recently, many new carotenoids synthesis genes have been isolated (Cheng 2006). Much of what has been learned about the carotenoid pathway in higher plants has come from Arabidopsis and tomato and in green algae has come from H. pluvialis and Dunaliella sp. (Cunningham 2002; Lemoine & Schoefs, 2010; Moulin et al. 2010).

In the aspect of human life, isoprenoids, as the great chemical derivatives of plants and algae, are utilized in industrial and chemical materials and could potentially even become as biofuel sources. Discovering the biosynthesis of the most important isoprenoids and identifying the role of related enzymes in plants and algae species is critically important to achieve modification of each pathway and product via plant metabolic engineering and biochemical engineering of plant and microbial systems. The performance of metabolically engineered higher plants and green algae species toward essential oil or carotenoid production is encouraging, and in some cases, their production capacity has either reached to the maximum or exceeded the production by native species. For instance, when the mutant of unicellular green alga, Ch. reinhardtii, was exposed to nutritional stress (N starvation), after 48 h, the carotenoid content was increased 30-fold, whereas in wild type, the carotenoid content was increased 15-fold, demonstrating that genetic manipulation can enhance carotenoid production (Wang et al. 2009). In tomato fruits, overexpression of lycopene β-cyclase enzyme (LCYB) increased both β-carotene and total carotenoids (Cunningham 2002). It is important to develop technologies that will produce isoprene in a cost-effective, environmentally friendly way and utilizing renewable sources. Modification of the MEP pathway and its related pathways in plants and microorganisms is necessary for the future production of chloroplast isoprenoids such as β-carotene (provitamin A) and α-tocopherol (vitamin E).

4.8 Acknowledgments

The authors thank the French Ministry for Education and Scientific Research and the University of Le Mans for financial supports. PH is very grateful to Pres LUNAM (programme: Structuration des coopérations inter nationales des laboratoires par la mobilité internationale des doctorants) and the Collège doctoral of the University of Le Mans (programme: Aide à la cotutelle internationale de thèse) for their financial supports.
4.9 References


Mycorrhizal infection, essential oil content and morpho-phenological characteristics variability in three mint species

Parisa Heydarizadeh\textsuperscript{a,b}, Morteza Zahedi\textsuperscript{*}, Mohammad R. Sabzalian\textsuperscript{a}, Ehsan Ataii\textsuperscript{a}

\textsuperscript{a}MicroMar, Mer Molécules Santé, LUNAM, IUM-LFR 3473 CNRS, University of Le Mans, Le Mans, France
\textsuperscript{b}Department of Agronomy and Plant Breeding, College of Agriculture, Isfahan University of Technology, Isfahan, Iran

*Corresponding author
email: mzahedi@cc.iut.ac.ir
Tel: +98 31 13 91 34 54
fax: +98 31 13 91 22 54.


5.1 Abstract

This study investigated the natural variation of arbuscular mycorrhizal associations and variation in morpho-phenological characteristics and essential oil content of 40 accessions of \textit{Mentha} species including \textit{Mentha spicata} L., \textit{Mentha piperita} L. and \textit{Mentha longifolia} (L.) Hudson collected from 13 provinces of Iran. The colonization by Arbuscular Mycorrhizal Fungi (AMF) was naturally found in 38 accessions ranged from 1.4 to 71.8\% of infection. There was a significant variation between and within species in terms of essential oil content differing from 0.30 to 3.33\% beyond the previously reported range. Accessions collected from colder climate conditions exhibited significantly higher oil content than those from warmer conditions. \textit{M. longifolia} had significantly higher oil content than the other two species. A high variation in fresh weight and leaf water content was also observed and higher mean values were obtained in accessions of \textit{M. piperita} and \textit{M. longifolia}, respectively. A dendrogram generated using the UPGMA algorithm classified the 40 accessions into four distinctive groups based on the species and discriminating characteristics. The high variability in naturally mycorrhizal infection, essential oil content and morphophenological characteristics suggests the possibility of improving mint accessions for horticultural and medicinal uses through selection in breeding programs.
5.2 Introduction

Mint has been exploited for essential oil production and herbage yield in a variety of applications including pharmaceutical, ornamental, food and vegetable uses and for confectionery and cosmetics industries (Zeinali et al. 2004). For each purpose, a great number of clones and species should be evaluated before selection for high levels of essential oil and vegetable yield, based on a well-developed method to choose between and within the species (Mirzaie-Nodoushan et al. 2001). To date, little attention has been given to the evaluation of diverse mint collections and the factors affecting oil content and production of edible tissues. Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi (AMF) are ubiquitous soil inhabitants forming the largest group symbiotically associated with agricultural crops (Smith & Read, 1997). They help plant species to uptake water and nutrients and make physiological changes to increase growth and productivity of host plants (Gupta & Janardhanan, 1991; Bethlenfalvay & Linderman, 1992).

Today, AMF are important components of rhizosphere microbial communities in natural ecosystems as well as they are extensively used as biofertilizers in agroecosystems (Smith & Read, 1997). Although mycorrhizal detection and investigations of their impacts on medicinal plants have rarely been conducted, they have been observed to be associated with medicinal and aromatic plants (Gupta et al. 1995). The symbiotic AMF can also induce changes in the accumulation of secondary metabolites, including phenolics in roots and aerial parts and also essential oil of host plants (Devi & Reddy, 2002; Rojas-Andrade et al. 2003; Yao et al. 2003; Copetta et al. 2006; Toussaint et al. 2007).

The recognition of the status of mycorrhizal association and its variation in medicinal and aromatic plants is, therefore, of particular concern to improve the quantity of pharmaceutical substances. In Mentha species, little is known about the distribution and naturally infection of AMF and their effects on either the production of essential oil or plant secondary metabolic pathways; though, there are reports that AMF could affect genetic variation of mint (Van der Heijden et al. 1998). In Mentha arvensis L. Gupta et al. (2002) reported that mycorrhizal inoculation significantly increased oil content and yield compared to non-mycorrhizal plants. Freitas et al. (2004) also observed that inoculation with AMF led to an increase of 89% in the essential oil and menthol contents of M. arvensis plants.

In Mentha piperita, Mucciarelli et al. (2003) observed that colonization by a non-mycorrhizal fungus increased essential oil content and altered the oil composition. Yet, no attempts have been made to investigate the variability of AMF colonization among Mentha species and to reveal the adaptation of plant-fungus accessions to different climatic conditions in a diverse genetic population. Three economically important Mentha species including Mentha spicata, Mentha longifolia and Mentha piperita have an extensive geographical range in Iran which in turn may bring about a significant genetic variation in these species for breeding mint in terms of important characteristics. For this purpose, collection and evaluation of diversity in plant germplasm is a prerequisite. On the other hand, environmental factors including the relation-ship between mint plant
and mycorrhizal colonization may also affect the morpho-phenological and physiological characteristics. This means that any report on genetic variation of mint should include the infection status of plant with mycorrhiza. The objectives of this study were, therefore, to survey the variation of morpho-phenological, and essential oil content and their relations in a broad mint germplasm collected from 13 provinces of Iran and investigate the effect of climate conditions of collected samples on different characteristics. The variation of AMF infection was also reported in genotypes of three Mentha species collected from various regions.

5.3 Material and methods

5.3.1 Plant material

A total of 28 accessions of M. spicata (spear mint) (which is the prevalent species of mint in Iran), 6 accessions of M. longifolia (horsemint) and 6 accessions of M. piperita (pepper mint) were collected from their natural habitats in 13 provinces of Iran (Figure 5.1) (Heydarizadeh et al. 2013). The collection strategy was to survey all environmental conditions that we categorized them into two groups; colder and warmer areas based on annual temperature. It is worth mentioning that colder areas have relatively higher precipitation compared to warmer areas. In each province, the most common accessions of species were collected with whole soil around, bagged and transferred to laboratory. A sample of plant roots including 20 rootlets originating from rhizomes and stolons and from each accession was immediately taken and the soil was then removed from the surface of the roots under running tap water.

![Figure 5.1. Collection sites map of 40 mint accessions (*)](image)

---

**Table 5.1.** Temperature and rainfall conditions in mint collection sites (°C) and (mm).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Province</th>
<th>Temperature (°C)</th>
<th>Rainfall (mm)</th>
<th>Climate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Western</td>
<td>11.5±1.86</td>
<td>404</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Hamadan</td>
<td>13.3±1.83</td>
<td>328</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Kermanshah</td>
<td>14.3±1.54</td>
<td>427</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Lorestan</td>
<td>17.2±1.55</td>
<td>409</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Alborz</td>
<td>14.9±1.62</td>
<td>248</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Ghaemishahr</td>
<td>14.0±1.83</td>
<td>351</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>North Khorasan</td>
<td>16.1±1.24</td>
<td>253</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Khorasan</td>
<td>25.3±1.37</td>
<td>161</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Markazi</td>
<td>21.9±1.97</td>
<td>192</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Eslamshahr</td>
<td>20.3±1.43</td>
<td>120</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Yazd</td>
<td>19.1±1.57</td>
<td>125</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Fars</td>
<td>23.5±1.32</td>
<td>195</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Razavi Khorasan</td>
<td>19.1±1.92</td>
<td>174</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
After washing, root samples were prepared for determination of percent colonization by arbuscular mycorrhizae using the modified staining method of Phillips & Hayman (1970) as described below.

### 5.3.2 Morpho-phenological characteristics analysis

To evaluate the variation of morpho-phenological characteristics and essential oil content in the same condition, the accessions were transplanted into a bare field (not planted before) located at Isfahan University of Technology, Isfahan, Iran (latitude 35°44'N, longitude 51°10'E, altitude 1320 m) and allowed to grow during 2009–2010. Field plots were 1.5 m long and 1.5 m wide arranged in a randomized complete block design with three replications. Between and within row spacing was 50 and 20 cm, respectively. In each row, 5 plants with the same size were cultured. The soil was a clay-loam type, well drained, with a pH of 6.8 fertilized with 60 kg N/ha and 30 kg P/ha before planting. Weeds were manually eliminated and plants were irrigated twice a week. Days to full flowering were calculated since initiation of regrowth on March 20. Then after, plants were cut at crown level; fresh weight per plant was immediately measured. Plants were oven-dried in 70°C for 48 h and dry weight per plant was also recorded in each plot. The number of branches on the main stem, plant height, the number of flowers per plant, flower length, leaf length and width were also determined based on 10 measurements for each accession in each plot. The average values were used for data analysis. Leaves were removed from 5 plants and their leaf areas were measured using a leaf area meter (Model LI-3 100, LI-COR, Inc., Lincoln, NE). After desiccation, leaf water content was calculated according the formula:

\[
\text{leaf water content} = \left[\frac{\text{leaf fresh weight} - \text{leaf dry weight}}{\text{leaf fresh weight}}\right] \times 100
\]

### 5.3.3 Mycorrhizal colonization assessments

The washed roots were cut into ~1-cm pieces, cleared in 10% KOH (24 h) and then rinsed in water. The materials were next acidified in 5% lactic acid (24 h) and the samples were again rinsed in water. The roots were stained with 0.05% aniline blue in 80% lactic acid (24 h) and finally stored in 80% lactic acid (Phillips & Hayman, 1970).

The percentage of root fungal colonization was estimated according to the gridline intersect method (Giovannetti and Mosse, 1980). Twenty root pieces (20 cm) mounted on slides (10×10) in glycerol:lactic acid (5:1) were examined at 800× and 1000× magnifications using a Nikon BH-2 light microscope containing an ocular crosshair eyepiece. Intersections between roots and crosshairs were observed for presence or absence of AMF (any arbuscules, vesicles and hyphae) and the percent incidence of infection over total intersections was calculated from the presence of colonized cells.
* Vesicle length, Vesicle width and hyphae diameter were measured by a mini camera and WinRHIZO Tron software.

*Colonization (%) = (number of infected roots / total number of crossing roots) × 100
Accordingly percent of colonization in figure 4.2 (as an example) is: \((88/147) \times 100 = 59.86\%

5.3.4 Essential oil isolation

A sample of 100 g of fresh leaves taken from each accession was shade dried and ground by using an electric grinder. The fine powder was mixed with 500 ml distilled water and submitted to hydro-distillation for 6 h using a Clevenger-type 5 apparatus (British Pharmacopoeia, 1980). The essential oil fraction was collected, weighted and calculated as percentage of sample dry weight.

5.3.5 Statistical analysis

Quantitative analyses of morpho-phenological characteristics were performed by one-way analysis of variance (ANOVA) using SAS software package (version 9.0) and based on unbalanced completely randomized design. Fungal colonization percentages were arcsine transformed to ensure data normality before analysis. Accessions were assigned as random samples and the mean squares of three mint species were tested.

* This part, including figure 4.2, is not in the manuscript and has been added in the content of thesis.
against the pooled mean squares of accessions within species. Also, mean squares of accessions in each species were tested against mean squares of replications within each accession. The differences among species and accessions were compared by least significant difference (LSD) test using SAS statistical software (SAS Inc. NC). Pearson correlation coefficients were employed in order to determine the degree of association between morphophenological characteristics and essential oil content. According to geographical similarity, the accessions of three species were divided into two collection-site conditions of colder and warmer to determine the effect of geographical conditions on essential oil content and its relation to other characteristics. A cluster analysis of the data was also performed to classify the most similar accessions based on the morphophenological characteristics and oil content according to Ward’s method (Ward, 1963) and to establish the structure and degree of association among mint accessions using SPSS software (Version 10.0, SPSS Inc., Chicago, USA).

5.4 Results

5.4.1 Mycorrhizal colonization assessment

All accessions except for two collected from Qazvin and Esfahan provinces were colonized by AMF (Table 5.1). Mycorrhizal infection ranged from 1.4 to 71.8% in *M. spicata*, from 0.0 to 50.0% in *M. longifolia* and from 0.0 to 44.4% in *M. piperita*. There was higher mycorrhizal colonization in *M. spicata* with an average of 30.3% (±4.2) compared to 18.9% (±7.9) and 24.1% (±7.6) in *M. piperita* and *M. longifolia*, respectively but the differences among the colonization rates were not statistically significant. The highest and lowest rates of colonization were found in two accessions of *M. spicata* collected from Ahvaz and Meibod regions, respectively. Extraradical hyphae forming appressorium (hyphodium), hyphal coils and arbuscules were observed in root tissues of all mycorrhizal genotypes (Figure 5.3).

5.4.2 Morpho-phenological characteristics assessment of mint species

Among recorded characteristics, the number of flowers per plant was the most variable characteristic based on the coefficient of variation (CV) which was 120.56% followed by leaf area and inflorescence length (CVs were 54.27 and 47.49%, respectively). The minimum variability was also obtained for leaf length and days to flowering (CV = 15.16% and 15.04%, respectively). The more the CV, the greater variability in the characteristic and therefore, higher CV could show the heterogeneity in the population needed for selection in breeding programs. Among accessions, the yield of shoot fresh weight ranged from 6.68 (Semirom) to 40.04 g (Kermanshah) and for shoot dry weight it ranged from 4.13 (Bojnourd) to 17.23 g (Esfahan4). On average, accessions from *M. piperita* presented remarkably higher mean values in terms of shoot fresh weight compared to those from *M. spicata* and *M. longifolia*. However, no
significant differences were found among species regarding shoot dry weight. Leaf water content ranged from 25.91 (Yazd) to 69.16% (Kashan3) both belonging to *M. spicata* (Table 5.1). On average, *M. longifolia* had significantly higher water content than the other two species. Esfahan4 accession from *M. spicata* had the highest number of flowers per plant (137.9) while, the lowest number (10.4) belonged to Kabootarabad accession from *M. piperita*. The number of branches and leaf area per plant were not significantly different among species. However, the Khorramabad accession was characterized by the highest branch number as a potential for leaf production associated

![Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi compartment visible under light microscope](image)

**Figure 5.3.** Arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi compartment visible under light microscope. A: apressorium; B: irregular hyphae coil; C: arbuscules inside cortex cells; D, E: vesicles; F: hyphae

*This has been added in the content of thesis*
with high leaf area in the range of obtained data from all accessions. The tall and early flowering accessions were from *M. longifolia* where Karaj was the tallest (77.7 cm) and Simirom was the earliest (80 days to flowering). Meanwhile, accession Esfahan3 from *M. spicata* and accession Tabas from *M. piperita* were the shortest (22.4 cm) and latest (162 days to flowering), respectively (Table 5.1). The phenotypic correlations between different characters (Table 5.2) showed that mint fresh herb yield was positively correlated with leaf length and the number of flowers per plant (*r* = 0.36* and 0.32*, respectively).

Shoot dry weight was also positively correlated with the number of flowers per plant (*r* = 0.61**). Therefore, an increase in flower formation is in correspondence with an increase in shoot fresh and dry weight. Moreover, a significant positive correlation (*r* = 0.46**) was found between fresh weight and days to flowering implying that late flowering mint plants have higher herb yield.

### 5.4.3 Essential oil content

The essential oil content was one of the most variable characteristics (CV = 61.09%) and it ranged from 0.30% (in Yazd accession from *M. spicata*) to 3.33% (in Hamadan accession from *M. longifolia*) over all tested accessions. There was only significant difference between *M. longifolia* and *M. spicata* in terms of essential oil content (Table 5.1). Considering variation within each species, the essential oil content in accessions belonging to *M. spicata* ranged from 0.30 to 1.45% with an average of 0.80% whereas, in *M. longifolia* and *M. piperita* it ranged from 0.63 to 3.33% and 0.69 to 1.60% with an average of 1.25 and 1.00%, respectively. No significant correlations were observed between oil content and morpho-phenological characters. Lawrence (1989) and Kokkini et al. (1995) suggested that the variability in essential oil content within *M. spicata* could have mainly been resulted from the impact of environmental factors. To test this conclusion, the data of our study were first splited into two data sets based on annual temperature (colder and warmer) of collection regions while colder areas have higher annual rainfall. Within each data set, correlations were then evaluated between leaf oil content and the other characteristics (Table 5.3). There were no significant correlations, but the mean oil content of accessions collected from colder region was higher than that of accessions collected from warmer area.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No</th>
<th>Species</th>
<th>Province</th>
<th>Region</th>
<th>Colonization (%)</th>
<th>Days to flowering</th>
<th>Height (cm)</th>
<th>Leaf length (cm)</th>
<th>Leaf width (cm)</th>
<th>Flower length (cm)</th>
<th>Branch number</th>
<th>Flower/Plant</th>
<th>Leaf area (cm²)</th>
<th>Leaf (% of leaf length)</th>
<th>Water (% of water)</th>
<th>Fresh weight (g/plant)</th>
<th>Dry weight (g/plant)</th>
<th>Oil content (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Nitella longifolia</td>
<td>Alborz</td>
<td>Karaj</td>
<td>30.3±4.2*</td>
<td>104.3±3.1*</td>
<td>43.1±4.4*</td>
<td>2.58±0.05*</td>
<td>1.47±0.07*</td>
<td>2.01±0.27*</td>
<td>2.05±1.16*</td>
<td>3.96±0.3</td>
<td>49.38±1.96*</td>
<td>15.04±0.11*</td>
<td>7.53±0.86*</td>
<td>6.80±0.60*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Nitella longifolia</td>
<td>Alborz</td>
<td>Karaj</td>
<td>30.4±1.08</td>
<td>107.7±3.4*</td>
<td>77.7±4.2*</td>
<td>2.73±0.15</td>
<td>1.54±0.15</td>
<td>3.85±0.43</td>
<td>26.0±2.26</td>
<td>4.91±0.3</td>
<td>61.37±2.07</td>
<td>9.23±0.21</td>
<td>16.50±2.91</td>
<td>4.28±0.37</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Nitella longifolia</td>
<td>Alborz</td>
<td>Karaj</td>
<td>30.4±1.08</td>
<td>108.7±3.4*</td>
<td>87.7±4.2*</td>
<td>2.73±0.15</td>
<td>1.54±0.15</td>
<td>3.85±0.43</td>
<td>26.0±2.26</td>
<td>4.91±0.3</td>
<td>61.37±2.07</td>
<td>9.23±0.21</td>
<td>16.50±2.91</td>
<td>4.28±0.37</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Nitella longifolia</td>
<td>Alborz</td>
<td>Karaj</td>
<td>30.4±1.08</td>
<td>108.7±3.4*</td>
<td>87.7±4.2*</td>
<td>2.73±0.15</td>
<td>1.54±0.15</td>
<td>3.85±0.43</td>
<td>26.0±2.26</td>
<td>4.91±0.3</td>
<td>61.37±2.07</td>
<td>9.23±0.21</td>
<td>16.50±2.91</td>
<td>4.28±0.37</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Nitella longifolia</td>
<td>Alborz</td>
<td>Karaj</td>
<td>30.4±1.08</td>
<td>108.7±3.4*</td>
<td>87.7±4.2*</td>
<td>2.73±0.15</td>
<td>1.54±0.15</td>
<td>3.85±0.43</td>
<td>26.0±2.26</td>
<td>4.91±0.3</td>
<td>61.37±2.07</td>
<td>9.23±0.21</td>
<td>16.50±2.91</td>
<td>4.28±0.37</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Nitella longifolia</td>
<td>Alborz</td>
<td>Karaj</td>
<td>30.4±1.08</td>
<td>108.7±3.4*</td>
<td>87.7±4.2*</td>
<td>2.73±0.15</td>
<td>1.54±0.15</td>
<td>3.85±0.43</td>
<td>26.0±2.26</td>
<td>4.91±0.3</td>
<td>61.37±2.07</td>
<td>9.23±0.21</td>
<td>16.50±2.91</td>
<td>4.28±0.37</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Nitella longifolia</td>
<td>Alborz</td>
<td>Karaj</td>
<td>30.4±1.08</td>
<td>108.7±3.4*</td>
<td>87.7±4.2*</td>
<td>2.73±0.15</td>
<td>1.54±0.15</td>
<td>3.85±0.43</td>
<td>26.0±2.26</td>
<td>4.91±0.3</td>
<td>61.37±2.07</td>
<td>9.23±0.21</td>
<td>16.50±2.91</td>
<td>4.28±0.37</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Nitella longifolia</td>
<td>Alborz</td>
<td>Karaj</td>
<td>30.4±1.08</td>
<td>108.7±3.4*</td>
<td>87.7±4.2*</td>
<td>2.73±0.15</td>
<td>1.54±0.15</td>
<td>3.85±0.43</td>
<td>26.0±2.26</td>
<td>4.91±0.3</td>
<td>61.37±2.07</td>
<td>9.23±0.21</td>
<td>16.50±2.91</td>
<td>4.28±0.37</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Nitella longifolia</td>
<td>Alborz</td>
<td>Karaj</td>
<td>30.4±1.08</td>
<td>108.7±3.4*</td>
<td>87.7±4.2*</td>
<td>2.73±0.15</td>
<td>1.54±0.15</td>
<td>3.85±0.43</td>
<td>26.0±2.26</td>
<td>4.91±0.3</td>
<td>61.37±2.07</td>
<td>9.23±0.21</td>
<td>16.50±2.91</td>
<td>4.28±0.37</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Nitella longifolia</td>
<td>Alborz</td>
<td>Karaj</td>
<td>30.4±1.08</td>
<td>108.7±3.4*</td>
<td>87.7±4.2*</td>
<td>2.73±0.15</td>
<td>1.54±0.15</td>
<td>3.85±0.43</td>
<td>26.0±2.26</td>
<td>4.91±0.3</td>
<td>61.37±2.07</td>
<td>9.23±0.21</td>
<td>16.50±2.91</td>
<td>4.28±0.37</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Means with the same letters within columns are not significantly different (p ≤ 5%).
Table 5.2. Relationship among different traits based on correlation coefficients (r) between morphophenological characters and oil content of 40 mint genotypes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Traits</th>
<th>DF</th>
<th>HT</th>
<th>LL</th>
<th>LD</th>
<th>FL</th>
<th>BN</th>
<th>FP</th>
<th>LA</th>
<th>LW</th>
<th>FW</th>
<th>DW</th>
<th>OC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DF</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HT</td>
<td>0.28</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LL</td>
<td>0.67**</td>
<td>0.38*</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LD</td>
<td>0.46**</td>
<td>0.19</td>
<td>0.71**</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FL</td>
<td>0.47**</td>
<td>0.03</td>
<td>0.35*</td>
<td>0.14</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BN</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>0.19</td>
<td>0.21</td>
<td>0.21</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FP</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>0.34*</td>
<td>0.37*</td>
<td>0.17</td>
<td>0.26</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LA</td>
<td>0.37*</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>0.65**</td>
<td>0.79**</td>
<td>0.08</td>
<td>0.40*</td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LW</td>
<td>0.40*</td>
<td>0.28</td>
<td>0.32*</td>
<td>0.27</td>
<td>0.32*</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FW</td>
<td>0.46**</td>
<td>0.03</td>
<td>0.36*</td>
<td>0.17</td>
<td>0.43**</td>
<td>0.27</td>
<td>0.32*</td>
<td>0.23</td>
<td>0.19</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DW</td>
<td>0.52**</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>0.20</td>
<td>0.24</td>
<td>0.61**</td>
<td>0.09</td>
<td>0.07</td>
<td>0.82**</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OC</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td>0.20</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td>0.15</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.19</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**, * Significant at 1% and 5% levels of probability, respectively.

DF: Days to flowering; HT: Height; LL: Leaf length; LD: Leaf width; FL: Flower length; BN: Branch number; FP: Flower/plant; LA: Leaf area; LW: Leaf water; FW: Fresh weight; DW: Dry weight; and OC: Oil content.
Table 5.3. Mean comparison of fungal colonization percentage and oil content and phenotypic correlation coefficients (r) between essential oil content with morphophenological characteristics categorized based on mint species and collection region.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Fungal colonization (%)</th>
<th>Oil content (%)</th>
<th>DF</th>
<th>HT</th>
<th>LL</th>
<th>LD</th>
<th>FL</th>
<th>BN</th>
<th>FP</th>
<th>LA</th>
<th>LW</th>
<th>FW</th>
<th>DW</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Species</td>
<td>M. spicata</td>
<td>30.3&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>0.80&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>0.19</td>
<td>0.13</td>
<td>0.14</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>0.30</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>0.31</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td>0.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M. piperita</td>
<td>18.9&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1.00&lt;sup&gt;ab&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>0.09</td>
<td>0.90*</td>
<td>0.16</td>
<td>0.71*</td>
<td>0.45</td>
<td>0.41</td>
<td>0.64</td>
<td>0.35</td>
<td>0.76*</td>
<td>0.40</td>
<td>0.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M. longifolia</td>
<td>24.1&lt;sup&gt;ab&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1.25&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>0.31</td>
<td>0.08</td>
<td>0.19</td>
<td>0.13</td>
<td>0.46</td>
<td>0.21</td>
<td>0.30</td>
<td>0.08</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>0.15</td>
<td>0.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Region</td>
<td>Colder area</td>
<td>27.11&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1.15&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>0.21</td>
<td>0.19</td>
<td>0.07</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td>0.21</td>
<td>0.19</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td>0.35</td>
<td>0.07</td>
<td>0.09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Warmer area</td>
<td>27.87&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>0.82&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>0.13</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td>0.17</td>
<td>0.24</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>†</sup> Means with the same letters in each category are not significantly different (p ≤ 5%).<sup>‡</sup> Significant at 5% level of probability,
DF: Days to flowering; HT: Height; LL: Leaf length; LD: Leaf width; FL: Flower length; BN: Branch number; FP: Flower/plant; LA: Leaf area; LW: Leaf water; FW: Fresh weight; DW: Dry weight; and OC: Oil content.
5.4.4 Cluster analysis

The dendrogram illustrated four different clusters (Figure 5.4). Cluster I comprises eight accessions of *M. spicata* and four out of six accessions of *M. longifolia* including that collected from Hamadan having the highest essential oil content (3.33%). Cluster II and III covered the most accessions of *M. spicata* plus two remaining accessions of *M. longifolia* with lower essential oil content than accessions categorized in cluster I. Four accessions of cluster III, which were all collected from Esfahan province, had higher herb fresh weight and number of flowers per plant compared to accessions of cluster II. Cluster IV included all accessions of *M. piperita* as well as four accessions of *M. spicata*. Cluster analysis showed relative distinctness of three mint species in terms of morpho-phenological characteristics but it did not differentiate accessions based on collection sites.

5.5 Discussion and conclusions

5.5.1 Discussion

The results revealed a high variation among mint accessions in regard to abundance of mycorrhizal colonization that may come from variability of mint genotypes or may be due to the effect of environmental conditions of natural habitats. These may also show that mint could have mycorrhizal infection up to 70% that in turn it could guarantee nutrient availability in potentially high levels of environmental uncertainty. The level of root infection by mycorrhizal species could determine the extent of positive effects of mycorrhiza on growth parameters of mycorrhizal dependent plant species (Graham et al. 1991; Copetta et al. 2006). Zubek & Błaszkowski (2009) showed that the level of root colonization by AM fungi was low in some medicinal plants. Therefore, the effects of these associated micro-organisms on medicinal properties of infected plants are expected to be insignificant if they are mycorrhizal dependent species. The existence of high variation in naturally occurring mycorrhizal colonization up to 71.8% in this study indicates that mint might be also a highly mycorrhizal associated plant under natural soil conditions. However, there is little information available on dependency of mint species to mycorrhizal infection. This could be determined by the evaluation of difference in mint growth parameters under mycorrhizal and non-mycorrhizal conditions (Graham et al. 1991). Gupta et al. (2002) reported that the effect of inoculation with *Glomus fasciculatum*, on growth and oil yield of menthol mint (*M. arvensis*) was more pronounced only in one out of three tested cultivars. Karagiannidis et al. (2011) also showed the difference among three Glomus species naturally infecting *Mentha viridis* on plant essential oil percentage. Therefore, the positive effect of this study was wider than those reported in the previous works. The herb yield of mint accessions evaluated by Zeinali et al. (2004) had variability with a range from 8.1 to 15.9 g per plant. Mirzaie-Nodoushan et al. (2001) identified days to flowering among
accessions of four mint species from 103 to 130 and Zeinali et al. (2004) reported a range from 83 to 100 days among 12 mint landraces. In comparison, the herb yield and days to flowering in our study ranged from 6.7 to 40.0 g and 80 to 162 days, respectively. These differences might be related to the utilization of a far more number of mint accessions in this work taken from the sites having unlike environmental conditions.

Figure. 5.4. Dendrogram generated from cluster analysis of 40 accessions of mint based on morpho-phenological characteristics and essential oil content using Ward clustering procedure. Green color represents *M. spicata*, blue represents *M. longifolia* and red represents *M. piperita*. (For interpretation of the references to color in figure legend, the reader is referred to the web version of the article.)
Among mint morpho-phenological characteristics, higher fresh weight and water content are important in particular for fresh uses and our results showed that simultaneous selection for both is possible since no significant negative correlation was found between the two characteristics (Table 5.2). This study showed high variability of essential oil content in *M. spicata*. Elmasta et al. (2006) also reported that the essential oil content ranged from 1.2 to 2.2% in *M. spicata*, overlapping with the range of data obtained in this study (0.30 to 1.45%). Our results also showed high potential of *M. longifolia* and *M. piperita* for essential oil production. The essential oil content of mint populations previously reported from Iran ranged from 0.43 to 2.10% (Mirzaie-Nodoushan et al. 2001; Zeinali et al. 2004.) while, the essential oil content of the two extreme accessions in this study, Yazd (*M. spicata*) and Hamadan (*M. longifolia*), was respectively less (0.30%) and more (3.33%) than reported range. There is no available information in the references for a highly essential oil-rich accession of *M. longifolia* as it was identified (accession Hamadan) in the present study. Such an outstanding accession could be multiplied and introduced to growers and could also be used for mint breeding programs.

There was no significant correlation between oil content and morpho-phenological characteristics in the 40 tested accessions of mint. Maffei et al. (1994) also reported that the correlation was not significant between leaf area and oil productivity in peppermint. However, in the study of Mirzaie-Nodoushan et al. (2001) using only 12 accessions of Mentha species, leaf essential oil content had positive correlation with leaf and stem length and negative correlation with days to flowering. In this study, the mean oil content of accessions collected from colder regions was higher than that of accessions collected from warmer areas (Table 5.3). This result may confirm the main role of environmental factors in determining the variation of mint oil content as a quantitative inherited characteristic. This also points out that water stress in warmer regions may have strongly depressed the variation of mint species with high essential oil percentage. Cluster analysis could almost differentiate accessions of three mint species into four different clusters based on plant morpho-phenological characteristics particularly herb fresh weight, the number of flowers per plant and essential oil content. This shows that Mentha species have significant distinctive characteristics in terms of some morpho-phenological characteristics and essential oil content. However, the results from cluster analysis could not discriminate the accessions based on the two collection-site conditions of colder and warmer areas. This means that variation of mint characteristics, except for leaf oil content, has not been significantly affected by environmental conditions.

**5.5.2 Conclusion**

A high variation was observed in mycorrhizal colonization of mint accessions of three *Mentha* species collected from different natural conditions. This may provide high adaptability of mint accessions to resource-limited growing situations; however, the
effect of natural variation of AMF colonization on mint physiological and morpho-phenological characteristics is remained unknown. Cluster analysis could almost separate three mint species based on the variation of morpho-phenological characters and essential oil content but it did not differentiate the two collection sites. We did not find any strong correlation between morpho-phenological characteristics and essential oil content. Therefore, selection for morpho-phenological characteristics may not be potentially suitable for improving oil content of mint genotypes in breeding programs. Although essential oil content was significantly affected by mint species, the effects of environmental conditions was more pronounced. An accession with outstanding essential oil content was identified in M. longifolia that may provide an opportunity for its propagation and distribution among growers for horticultural and medicinal purposes.

5.6 Acknowledgment

The authors thank Dr. Hossein Zeinali, Isfahan Agricultural Research Center, for providing of some accessions and Dr. Aghafakhr Mirlohi, Isfahan University of Technology, for critical review of this manuscript before submission.

5.7 References


Chapter 6

Photosynthesis under artificial light: the shift in primary and secondary metabolism

Eva Darkoa, Parisa Heydarizadehb,c, Benoit Schoefsb, Mohammad R. Sabzalianc*

a Agricultural Institute, Centre for Agricultural Research, Hungarian Academy of Sciences, Martonvásár, Hungary
b MicroMar, Mer Molécules Santé, IUML - FR 3473 CNRS, Faculté des Sciences et Techniques, University of Le Mans, Le Mans, France
c College of Agriculture, Department of Agronomy and Plant Breeding, Isfahan University of Technology, Isfahan 84156-83111, Iran

*Corresponding author
email: sabzalian@cc.iut.ac.ir
Tel: +98 31 13 91 34 52
fax: +98 31 13 91 22 54.


6.1 Abstract

Providing an adequate quantity and quality of food for the escalating human population under changing climatic conditions is currently a great challenge. In outdoor cultures, sunlight provides energy (through photosynthesis) for photosynthetic organisms. They also use light quality to sense and respond to their environment. To increase the production capacity, controlled growing systems using artificial lighting have been taken into consideration. Recent development of light-emitting diode (LED) technologies presents an enormous potential for improving plant growth and making systems more sustainable. This review uses selected examples to show how LED can mimic natural light to ensure the growth and development of photosynthetic organisms, and how changes in intensity and wavelength can manipulate the plant metabolism with the aim to produce functionalized foods.
6.2 Introduction

The rising population, climate changes, land use competition for food, feed, fuel and fibre production as well as the increasing demand for valuable natural compounds all reinforce the need for artificial growing systems such as greenhouses, soilless systems and vertical gardening, even in spacecrafts and space stations. Most of these growing systems require the application of additional, at least supplementary, light sources to ensure plant growth. Because these sources are heat dissipaters requiring cooling, artificial systems are frequently at odds with the demand for sustainability in industrial processes. In terms of both economics and sustainability, new lighting technologies such as lightemitting diodes (LEDs) thus were necessary to be developed (Massa et al. 2006; Sheng et al. 2013). Above all technological properties, LEDs should be compatible with the photosynthesis and light-signalling requirements of plants, which are tightly linked with the two main characteristics of light: wavelength and fluence.

Being mostly immobile, photosynthetic organisms must adapt to their biotic and abiotic environments that they sense through different types of receptors, including photoreceptors (Cheng et al. 2004). The pigment moiety of photoreceptors allows the receptor to extract from the incoming natural white light the specific information related to the intensity of the environmental light constraints. This information is used to develop the adequate response (Cheng et al. 2004).

Photosynthesis is a photobiochemical process using light energy to produce ATP and NADPH, ultimately consumed in the assembly of carbon atoms in organic molecules. Functionally, photons are harvested by protein–chlorophyll (Chl)–carotenoid complexes (that form the light harvesting antenna of photosystems) and then transferred to the photosystem reaction centre, where electrons are generated; these processes take place in the chloroplast (Solymosi & Keresztes, 2012). If lighting is too weak, photosynthesis cannot work efficiently and etiolation symptoms appear (Solymosi & Schoefs, 2010). However, excessive light generates oxygen radicals and causes photoinhibition. Both phenomena strongly limit primary productivity (Barber & Andersson, 1992).

Photosynthetic processes are often modified in plants grown under artificial lighting, because lamps do not usually mimic the spectrum and energy of sunlight. Agronomically, new lighting technologies such as LEDs have the potential to cover fluence and wavelength requirements of plants, while allowing specific wavelengths to be enriched, thus supplying the light quantity and quality essential for different phases of growth. The biomass and metabolic products of cultivated plants can therefore be modified.

This review gives a brief summary of the types of artificial lighting available for growing photosynthetic organisms. The capacity of LEDs to mimic the effects of natural light in terms of energy and information, thus ensuring the growth and development of photosynthetic organisms, and the potential for manipulating the plant metabolism to produce functionalized foods through changes in the intensity and wavelength are also reviewed here using selected examples.
6.3 Artificial light sources for photosynthesis

Artificial lighting should provide plants with energy and information required for development. For this purpose, fluorescent lamps, particularly those having enhanced blue and red spectra (i.e. cool fluorescent white lamps), are widely used in growth chambers, together with additional light sources to achieve the sustained photosynthetic photon fluence necessary for high productivity (Massa et al. 2006; Yeh & Chung, 2009). However, the spectrum and intensity of fluorescent lights are not stable over a long time.

High intensity discharge (HID) lamps, such as metal halide and high-pressure sodium lamps, have relatively high fluence (max. 200 lumens per watt) and high photosynthetically active radiations (PARs) efficiency (max. 40%), and are typically used in greenhouses and plant growth rooms. The drawbacks including elevated arc to fire energy requirement, the high operational temperature preventing placement close to the canopy and the spectral distribution (high proportion of green–yellow region, significant ultraviolet radiation and altered red:far-red ratio), which may shift according to the input power, strongly limit their use and innovation (Martineau et al. 2012).

Among artificial lighting systems, LEDs present the maximum PAR efficiency (80–100%, see supplemental Table 6.1). LEDs emitting blue, green, yellow, orange, red and far red are available and can be combined to provide either high fluence (over full sunlight, if desired), or special light wavelength characteristics, thanks to their narrow-bandwidth light spectrum (Bula et al. 1991). The high efficiency, low operating temperature and small size enable LEDs to be used in pulsed lighting and be placed close to the leaves in interlighting and intracanopy irradiation (Yeh & Chung, 2009). Their long life expectancy and ease of control make them ideal for greenhouses in use all year round (Yeh & Chung, 2009). The LED technology is predicted to replace fluorescent and HID lamps in horticultural systems and to revolutionize controlled growth environments.

6.4 Changing light intensity and quality

From the biological point of view, the main questions about LEDs are related to their ability to mimic and enhance the beneficial effects of natural light while avoiding the adverse influence. Below, selected examples are used to provide a short review on useful properties of LED lights in these aspects.

6.4.1 Light-emitting diode light(s) can sustain normal plant growth

Pioneer experiments on plant growth under red LEDs on lettuce were reported by Bula et al. (1991). Martineau et al. (2012) calculated that the amounts of dry matter per mole of artificial lighting gained by lettuce grown using red (650 nm) LEDs or highpressure sodium lamps were identical, and Chang et al. (2011) calculated that the maximum photon utilization efficiency for growth of the green alga Chlamydomonas
reinhardtii under red LEDs is centred at 674 nm. Lettuce grown under red LEDs presented hypocotyls and cotyledons that were elongated, a phenomenon known to be phytochrome-dependent. Under red LEDs illumination, phytochrome stimulation is especially high as far red light is not provided. Hypocotyl elongation could be prevented by adding at least 15 mmol m\(^{-2}\) s\(^{-1}\) of blue light (Hoenecke et al. 1992). Although a complete demonstration was not provided, one can hypothesize that the supplemented blue light activated cryptochrome, a blue-light photoreceptor that mediates reduction of hypocotyl length (Ahmad et al. 2002).

The efficiency of red (650–665 nm) LEDs on plant growth is easy to understand because these wavelengths perfectly fit with the absorption peak of chlorophylls (Schoefs, 2002) and phytochrome, while the supplemented blue light introduced the idea that growth under natural light could be mimicked using blue and red LEDs. In addition to providing a better excitation of the different types of photoreceptors, the blue + red combination allowed a higher photosynthetic activity than that under either monochromatic light (Sabzalian et al. 2014). Some authors attributed this effect to a higher nitrogen content of the bluelight-supplemented plants, whereas others suggested a better stomatal opening, thus providing more CO\(_2\) for photosynthesis.

It is well established that stomata opening is controlled by blue light photoreceptors (Schwartz & Zeiger, 1984). This is possibly reflected in the increase of shoot dry matter with increasing levels of blue light (Goins et al. 1998). The supplementation of blue and red LEDs could also be complemented with green LED. Illumination with more than 50% of green LED light caused a reduction in plant growth, whereas treatments containing up to 24% green light enhanced growth for some species (Kim et al. 2006). Recently, LEDs have been successfully tested for their ability to allow the growth of agronomically important crops, fruit and flower plants, and even trees [Sabzalian et al. 2014; Astolfi et al. 2012]. Table 6.1 shows the parameter changes in selected taxa exposed to different wavelengths of LEDs compared with the other light sources.

### 6.4.2 Chloroplast differentiation and de-differentiation

In the absence of light or under deep shade conditions, plants develop etiolation symptoms, such as the absence of Chl, reduced leaf size and hypocotyl elongation (Solymosi & Schoefs, 2010). When the plants are exposed to light, chloroplast differentiation involves the accumulation of proteins, lipids and photosynthetic pigments (Biswal et al. 2003). The kinetics of Chl accumulation present a lag phase under white LED light, which is eliminated when plants are grown under blue LED (460–475 nm) but not in red LED light (650–665 nm) (Wua et al. 2007). Interestingly, similar Chl amounts were reached, regardless of the LED colour. In contrast to Chl, red LED-irradiated pea leaves contained higher levels of \(\beta\)-carotene than those grown under blue or white LED light (Wua et al. 2007). The light intensity is also important in Chl synthesis. For instance, Tripathy & Brown (1995) showed that wheat seedlings accumulated Chl under red LED light at 100 \(\mu\)mol m\(^{-2}\) s\(^{-1}\), but not at 500 \(\mu\)mol m\(^{-2}\) s\(^{-1}\).
This inhibition of Chl accumulation under high fluence red LED light could be avoided by the supplementation of blue light (30 μmol m⁻² s⁻¹). Although no demonstration of the effect was provided by the authors, the absence of Chl accumulation under high fluence red light could result from a fast photodestruction of the newly formed Chl molecules (Franck et al. 1995). Interestingly, re-etiolation provides adequate conditions for the production of white asparagus, chicory or seakale (Péron, 1990). In tea leaves, the re-etiolation increases the content of volatiles (aroma), especially volatile phenylpropanoids/benzenoids and several amino acids, including L-phenylalanine (Yang et al. 2012), suggesting the activation of a plastid-located shikimate pathway (Brillouet et al. 2012).

6.4.3 High fluence light-emitting diode triggers production of secondary compounds

Photosynthetic organisms exposed to high light develop short- and long-term response mechanisms to reduce stress effects. Some of these mechanisms are the specific topic of other papers included in this special issue (xanthophylls cycle (Dall’Osto et al. 2014), non-photochemical quenching (Roháček et al. 2014), re-oxidation of the reduction equivalents through photorespiration, the malate valve and the action of antioxidants (Heyno et al. 2014)).

This section is dedicated to the metabolic shifts triggered by high light stress. They are used in repairing mechanisms (Long et al. 1994), shielding (Lee & Gould, 2002), reactive oxygen species (ROS) quenching (Lee & Gould, 2002) or the production of storage compounds (Lemoine & Schoefs, 2010). The synthesis of the metabolites takes place in plastids (terpenoids (Lemoine & Schoefs, 2010)) or involves them (phenylpropanoids (Brillouet et al. 2013)). Typical examples are medicinal plants and herbs of pharmaceutical importance such as mint (Mentha sp.) (Sabzalian et al. 2014) and jewel orchid (Anoectochilus sp.) (Ma et al. 2010). However, a decrease in secondary metabolites, flavonoids and phenolics, was also observed with increasing irradiance in the medicinal plant cat’s whiskers (Orthosiphon stamineus) (Ibrahim & Jaafar, 2012), indicating that the light irradiance may have negative consequences on secondary metabolite production.

In higher plants, it has been documented that depending on species and growing conditions, the secondary metabolites and pigments in the flavonoid family accumulate under photoinhibitory conditions at cell level (Chan et al. 2010), although the mechanistic aspects of LED light effects are not well understood.

The high fluence effect of LED light has been studied more in photosynthetic microorganisms, partly because they present huge biotechnological and economic potential (biofuels, pharmaceuticals, food additives and cosmetics) (Chan et al. 2010). For instance, Wang et al. (2007) assessed the economic efficiency of energy converted to biomass in microalga (Spirulina platensis) culture under different LED monochromatic lights as grams of biomass per litre per dollar.
Table 6.1. The effects of LEDs on plants' growth parameters and metabolism compared with conventional lights: selected examples. HPS, high-pressure sodium; CFL, compact fluorescent light; PPFD, photosynthetic photon flux density; DW, dry weight; FW, fresh weight.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>taxa</th>
<th>parameter</th>
<th>LEDs value (bold)/wavelength (nm/intensity (PPFD))</th>
<th>conventional (HPS, CFL value (bold)/type/intensity (PPFD))</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Lactuca sativa</em> var.</td>
<td>dry mass (gmol⁻¹ m⁻²) - wet mass (gmol⁻¹ m⁻³)</td>
<td>0.45/650/319</td>
<td>0.46/HPS, Na/642</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Raphanus sativus</em> var.</td>
<td>productivity (gcm⁻² day⁻¹)</td>
<td>7.21</td>
<td>8.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Cucumis sativus</em> L.</td>
<td>fruit FW (g)</td>
<td>0.14/455 + 640 + 660 + 735/9 + 120 + 9.4 + 3</td>
<td>0.9/HPS/250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Lycopersicon esculentum</em></td>
<td>fruit DW (g)</td>
<td>54.8</td>
<td>39.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Dendranthema grandiflorum</em></td>
<td>plant DW (g)</td>
<td>113</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Kim 'Cheonsu' plantlets</em></td>
<td>plantlet growth:</td>
<td>/440;650;440 + 650; 650 + 720/50</td>
<td>/CEP/50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Lactuca sativa</em> cv.</td>
<td>metabolite (mg g⁻¹ FW): carboxylates</td>
<td>9640; 455 + 640 + 735/200</td>
<td>/HPS, Son-T Agro/200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Petroselinum crispum</em> cv.</td>
<td>carbohydrates</td>
<td>8;10</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Majorana horstend</em></td>
<td>carbohydrates</td>
<td>42.5/23</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Brassica oleracea</em> cv.</td>
<td>carbohydrates</td>
<td>13/12</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Petunia hybrid cv.</em></td>
<td>carbohydrates</td>
<td>0.6/0.5</td>
<td>1.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Fragaria x ananassa</em> cv.</td>
<td>carbohydrates</td>
<td>19/19</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Mentha sp.</em></td>
<td>essential oil (% of DW)</td>
<td>1660/755/50</td>
<td>CFL/50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M. spicata</td>
<td>glucosinolate</td>
<td>6.9/11/2.7/8.9/8.1</td>
<td>21/7/32/0.8/ND/ND</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M. piperita</td>
<td>volatiles molecules (nmol kg⁻¹); benzaldehyde</td>
<td>0.23/0.2</td>
<td>0.015/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M. longifolia</td>
<td>2-phenylethanol</td>
<td>0.25/0.17</td>
<td>0.02/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Fragaria x ananassa</em></td>
<td>methyl butyrate</td>
<td>1.8/2.1/3.0</td>
<td>1.8/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Euphorbia alata</em></td>
<td>ethyl caprate</td>
<td>ND/0.5/0.2</td>
<td>1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Panax ginseng</em></td>
<td>metabolites phenolic acids (µg g⁻¹ DW): vanillic acid</td>
<td>41/27</td>
<td>0.33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Mentha sp.</em></td>
<td>essential oil (% of DW)</td>
<td>465/630/24</td>
<td>CFL/24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>M. spicata</em></td>
<td>glucosinolate</td>
<td>4.34/5.03</td>
<td>0.66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>M. piperita</em></td>
<td>2-phenylethanol</td>
<td>7.00/3.11</td>
<td>1.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>M. longifolia</em></td>
<td>ethyl caprate</td>
<td>4.37/3.19</td>
<td>3.33</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The data showed that at the light intensity of 1500–3000 µmol m\(^{-2}\) s\(^{-1}\), red LEDs consumed the least power and yielded the highest economic efficiency when emitted at the same intensity compared with blue LEDs (up to 110 versus lower than 10 g per litre per dollar, respectively). However, such a high fluence is not always requested. For instance, in the green microalga Dunaliella salina, light stress to drive the accumulation of β-carotene was within the range of 170–255 µmol m\(^{-2}\) s\(^{-1}\) using LEDs, whereas 1000 µmol m\(^{-2}\) s\(^{-1}\) photon flux was needed using conventional lights such as fluorescent lamps and high-pressure sodium lamps (Lamers et al. 2010). Additional red or blue (470 nm) LED light caused stress whereby the xanthophylls cycle was activated. The additional blue light was less stressful than the red light (Fu et al. 2013). Katsuda et al. (2004) reported that red LED light allowed the growth of the green alga Haematococcus pluvialis, whereas blue LED light enhanced astaxanthin production. More recently, Katsuda et al. (2008) showed that in mixotrophic growing conditions, flashing LED light (8 µmol photon m\(^{-2}\) s\(^{-1}\)) triggered similar astaxanthin concentration to continuous LED light (12 µmol photon m\(^{-2}\) s\(^{-1}\)).

Such low light requirement suggests the involvement of photoreceptors. A putative transduction mechanism of the blue light signal would involve major carotenoids in D. salina. Signalling of secondary carotenoidsynthesis involves chloroplast-generated ROS (Lee & Gould, 2002). Much more investigation is needed to understand the impact of LED light on primary and secondary metabolism of photosynthetic organisms.

6.4.4 Modification of the metabolism through supplemental monochromatic lighting

The effect of supplemental blue and/or red LED light is not limited to growing and developmental properties. They also increase the antioxidant content of vegetables. For instance, red (658–660 nm) LED light increased the phenolics concentration in lettuce leaves [48] and the anthocyanin content of red cabbage leaves (Wua et al. 2007). One can therefore imagine designing supplemental LED light treatments as pre- or post-harvesting processes to fashion raw materials. This would provide great commercial and production advantages. For instance, Colquhoun et al. (2013) used LED treatment to modify the synthesis of volatile compounds in flowers and fruits. In tomato, a red LED treatment (668 nm, 50 µmol photon m\(^{-2}\) s\(^{-1}\)) triggered a significant increase of 2-methylbutanol and 3-methyl-1-butanol levels, whereas the amount of cis-3-hexanol was reduced when compared with the levels reached with white LED light. Because two of those three compounds are involved in the degree of tomato sweetness (Tieman et al. 2012), one can hypothesize that the LED treatment will impact the taste of the fruit. The mechanism of action of the monochromatic light has not been studied as yet, but one can assume that the red light affects terpenoid production in the chloroplast through phytochrome. Alternatively, specific ROS production could have the same action as shown in the case of secondary carotenoid synthesis (Lee & Gould, 2002).
6.5 Photosynthesis in the light of future advances

Food production relies on photosynthesis. Providing sufficient quantity and quality of food for nine billion people as predicted in 2050 is especially challenging under the constraints of global climate change. Controlled-environment agriculture (CEA) technologies, including greenhouse, hydroponics, aquacultures and aeroponic systems, as well as the vertical farming possibilities, provide alternative and complementary sources for crop production, particularly in areas with limited daylight (in northern latitudes) or adverse environmental conditions (droughts, floods, storms and saline soils) or in areas with limited space, such as cities and space stations (Massa et al. 2006; Yeh & Chung, 2009).

The advantages of CEA technologies, *i.e.* elevated crop yield per year (owing to shorter culture period under optimal environmental conditions and cultivation year round), greater growth area per m² (large plant density, multi-tier cultivation shelves), efficient nutrient and water use, fewer crop losses and no pesticide application, make them efficient for crop production. In addition, these technologies may produce standard high-quality horticultural products. However, in contrast to outdoor agriculture, closed and indoor plant cultivations rely on novel light sources such as LEDs capable of stimulating plant growth while drastically reducing energy consumption. LEDs represent an innovative artificial lighting source for plants, both as supplemental or sole-source lighting, not only owing to their intensity, spectral and energy advances, but also via the possibilities for targeted manipulation of metabolic responses in order to optimize plant productivity and quality. LEDs are now commercially applicable mainly for leafy greens, vegetables, herbs and pot flowers (Table 6.1).

A more complete references was also presented in the seventh International Symposium on Light in Horticultural Systems, held in Wageningen (http://www.acta.hort.org/books/956).

The application of LEDs also has enormous potential for the processes that generate oxygen and purify water, in algal culture for producing feedstock, pharmaceuticals, fuels or dyes, and in plant tissue cultures for the micropropagation of, for example, strawberry or flowering plants (Nhu et al. 2000; Lian et al. 2002).

Research on the effects of LEDs on primary and secondary metabolism of plants and on how the direction and mixing of LEDs influence plant responses, coupled with advances in the dynamic modification of light quantity and quality in different phases of growth may contribute to the efficient utilization of LED lighting technologies in plant cultivation in closed environments (Figure 6.1).
The lighting industry needs to offer energy-efficient, ecologically sustainable lamps adapted to the changing requirements of consumers. LEDs equipped with driver chips could provide the additional benefits of operational flexibility, efficiency, reliability, controllability and intelligence for greenhouse lighting systems. However, the acceptance of solid-state LED lighting in niche applications in horticultural lighting will depend on improvements in conversion efficiency and light output per package of LED light and the cost of lumens per package. It is predicted that horticultural cultivation under controlled environmental conditions (horticulture industry) will expand in the near future, as was presented in the workshop on Challenges in Vertical Farming (http://challengesinverticalfarming.org/). The new technologies provide possibilities for economically efficient consumption of light energy for horticultural cultivation of crops both on Earth and in space in the near future, and may contribute to feeding the growing human population and maintaining outdoor (principally forest) ecosystems and thus to the protection of the Earth.
6.6 Acknowledgments

The authors acknowledge their institutes, Hungarian Academy of Sciences, University of Le Mans and Isfahan University of Technology. M.R.S. also thanks the Iranian National Elites Foundation for financial support of work on LED incubator construction and cultivation of horticultural and agronomic crops illuminated with LED lights. Funding statement. E.D. appreciates partial financial support from TA’ MOP (grant no. 4.2.2A-11/1/KONV-2012-0008).

6.7 References


6.8 Supplemental data

Supplemental data 6.1. Artificial light sources used in plant cultivation

**Table 6.1. Properties of common artificial light sources used in plant cultivation.**

*Lighting Efficiency:* is luminous efficacy of a light source which produces visible light. In SI system, luminous efficacy is described as lumens per watt (lm/W); *PAR:* Photosynthetically Active Radiations: designates the part of spectral radiation from 400 to 700 nanometers that photosynthetic organisms use in the process of photosynthesis; *Spectral specificity:* shows the dominant wave band (color) of light sources; *Lifespan:* is the average time that a light source is expected to have rated service life; *Energy cost:* the cost of electricity generated by different sources typically as Euro/kWh, or $/KWh; *Heat generation:* the conversion of electricity to heat instead of photosynthetic light; *Environmental:* environmentally friendly status.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Light Category</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Lighting Efficiency (lm/watt)</th>
<th>% PAR efficiency</th>
<th>Spectral specificity</th>
<th>Lifespan (10^3 hours)</th>
<th>Energy cost</th>
<th>Price of shopping</th>
<th>Heat generation</th>
<th>Environmental</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Fluorescent</em></td>
<td>Compact Fluorescent</td>
<td>46-75</td>
<td>35-40</td>
<td>Polychromatic (white) 492–600 nm</td>
<td>8-1</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Inexpensive</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Negative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tubular Fluorescent</td>
<td>70-104</td>
<td>20-30</td>
<td>Polychromatic (blue) 492–600 nm</td>
<td>15-24</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Inexpensive</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>Negative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>High intensity Discharge</em></td>
<td>Metal Halide</td>
<td>65-115</td>
<td>29-32</td>
<td>Bluish 400 - 500 nm</td>
<td>10-20</td>
<td>Very high</td>
<td>Expensive</td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>Negative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Low Pressure Sodium</td>
<td>100-200</td>
<td>15–29</td>
<td>Yellowish 570-590 nm</td>
<td>&gt;24</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>Expensive</td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>Negative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>High Pressure Sodium</td>
<td>100-110</td>
<td>30-35</td>
<td>Golden-yellowish 570-590 nm</td>
<td>&gt;24</td>
<td>Very high</td>
<td>Expensive</td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>Negative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Solid-State</em></td>
<td>Light-Emitting Diode</td>
<td>58-200</td>
<td>80-100</td>
<td>Monochrome</td>
<td>25&gt;</td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td>Recently inexpensive</td>
<td>Very low</td>
<td>Positive</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
References


High performance of vegetables, flowers, and medicinal plants in a red-blue LED incubator for indoor plant production

Mohammad R. Sabzalian\textsuperscript{a*}, Parisa Heydarizadeh\textsuperscript{ab}, Morteza Zahedi\textsuperscript{a}, Amin Boroomand\textsuperscript{a}, Mehran Agharokh\textsuperscript{a}, Mohammad R. Sahba\textsuperscript{a}, Benoît Schoefs\textsuperscript{b}

\textsuperscript{a}College of Agriculture, Department of Agronomy and Plant Breeding, Isfahan University of Technology, Isfahan 84156-83111, Iran
\textsuperscript{b}MicroMar, Mer Mole’ules Sante’, IUML - FR 3473 CNRS, Faculte’ des Sciences et Techniques, University of Le Mans, Le Mans, France

*Corresponding author
email: sabzalian@cc.iut.ac.ir
Tel: +98 31 13 91 34 52
fax: +98 31 13 91 22 54.


7.1 Abstract

In urban agriculture, plant growth is limited by the availability of light. Light emitting diodes (LED) could provide specific quality and quantity of light overcoming existing limitations for normal plant growth. However, there have been very few investigations on the applications of LED in incubators and plant growth chambers. The devices fabricated in this study, were lighted with 100\%red, 100\%blue, 70\%red+30 \% blue, or 100 \% white LED. We cultivated \textit{Mentha piperita}, \textit{Mentha spicata} and \textit{Mentha longifolia}, lentil, basil, and four ornamentals to test the effect of various LED lights on plants productivity compared with field and greenhouse conditions. Our results show that 70/30 \% red-blue LED light increased \textit{Mentha} essential oil yield up to four times along with increases in plant photosynthesis and fresh weight compared with field condition. Also, \textit{Mentha} growth under fluorescent light dramatically decreased compare to the ones grown under LED. The red-blue LED incubator also led to a better growth of lentil and basil and to higher flower buds and less days to flowering for pot flowers versus
greenhouse conditions. Our findings demonstrate that LED could improve economic characteristics of plant species by probably stimulating plant metabolism.

**Keywords:** Essential oil, Incubator, Light emitting diodes, *Mentha*, Pot flower, Vegetable.

### 7.2 Introduction

Food supply shortage due to increasing population, limited cultivated lands, serious droughts, floods, and storms as well as pest and disease outbreaks and climate changes, are forcing people to indoor and urban plant production (Yeh & Chung, 2009). With demanding world of low energy input and high plant quality output, the desired planting systems should be clean; safe and eco-friendly; and simultaneously, fast, economic, and profitable. Urban culture systems and vertical farming constitute responses to these challenges to make progress in efficiently production of crop plants and vegetables.

In the past, plant culture in controlled-environments had frequent constraints particularly commercially available light sources, which could not provide a stable level of radiant energy with high photosynthetic photon flux and a spectrum close to that of sunlight. These limitations for plants growth were evident, especially for those cultured inside phytotrons and small growth chambers (incubators) (Delepoulle et al. 2008). However, the recent application of light emitting diodes (LED) in different studies suggest that they are high intensity sources of visible radiation for growing horticultural and agronomic plants under closed conditions, dominantly illuminated by blue, red, red-blue, or white LED lights (Brown et al. 1995; Yanagi & Okamoto, 1997; Duong et al. 2002; Kurilcik et al. 2008). The recent decrease of both blue and red LED price together with the increase in their brightness has made LED light as an important alternative irradiation possibility, allowing better growth and production of plants and microorganisms (Table 7.1). For recent review, see Darko et al. (2014).

The invention of light emitting diodes (LED) could be considered as the next great innovation in lighting. The basic LED consists of a semiconductor diode, *i.e.* a chip of semiconductor material doped with impurities to create a junction emitting light wavelength, depending on the band gap energy of the materials that forms the junction (Yam & Hassan, 2005). They have been evolved from low-intensity signal indicators into powerful light sources (Yeh & Chung, 2009). They are suitable for many applications from street lighting to lighting greenhouses and illuminating urban agricultural system, which is now a growing high-tech industry. With high efficiency, long life expectancy, small physical dimensions, low operating temperatures, and ease of control, LED lights are, therefore, expected to be developed further and become a light source with considerable potential for high-power lighting, as used where plant production could be continued all year round.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of LED illumination</th>
<th>Effects</th>
<th>Plant/organism</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Red -10% Blue fluorescent light</td>
<td>Higher shoot dry weight, higher seed yield</td>
<td>Wheat</td>
<td>Goins et al. 1997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red-Blue</td>
<td>Higher shoot and root fresh weight</td>
<td>Micropropagated strawberry plants</td>
<td>Nhut et al. 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red-Blue</td>
<td>Larger and higher bulblet fresh and dry weight</td>
<td>Lilium</td>
<td>Lian et al. 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red-Blue</td>
<td>Improved flower induction, higher number of flower buds and open flowers</td>
<td>Cyclamen persicum</td>
<td>Heo et al. 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blue</td>
<td>Higher carotenoid production</td>
<td>Thraustochytriumsp CHN-1</td>
<td>Yamaoka et al. 2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red-Blue</td>
<td>Higher leaf area and photosynthetic rate</td>
<td>Radish and Lettuce</td>
<td>Tamulaitis et al. 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blue</td>
<td>Astaxanthin production</td>
<td>Haematococcus pluvialis</td>
<td>Katsuda et al. 2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red</td>
<td>Better growth</td>
<td>Spirulina platensis</td>
<td>Wang et al. 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red</td>
<td>Higher antioxidant activity</td>
<td>pea</td>
<td>Wu et al. 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red</td>
<td>Higher rooting percentage</td>
<td>grape</td>
<td>Poudel et al. 2008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red-Blue</td>
<td>Economic production</td>
<td>Lettuce</td>
<td>Martineau et al. 2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red</td>
<td>Increase in volatile molecules</td>
<td>Petunia, Strawberry</td>
<td>Colquhoun et al. 2013</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**LED**: Light Emitting Diode
For plant culture, in addition to their monochromatic bandwidth, LED lights present several advantages including (1) maintaining constant light output over years, (2) consuming low electricity, and (3) producing low heat radiation while emitting high light intensities (Yeh & Chung, 2009). The last property allows providing higher photosynthetic photon flux levels at least 500 μmol m\(^{-2}\) s\(^{-1}\) and higher ratio of light intensity to heat radiation compared with conventional lighting systems. This introduces LED as a promising lighting source for sustainable production in growth chambers and greenhouses.

To commercialize LED-equipped systems and to make them available to the market, they must be accompanied with sophisticated accessories to assist automatically controlling and adjusting light and probably other environmental parameters. One of these growing systems was constructed and reported for the first time by Folta et al. (2005) for plant research, which could control environmental growth factors; however, plant growth performance was not reported. In the present study, to investigate the suitability of such growth chambers, they were equipped with red-blue LED arrays (Figure 7.1) in order to (1) evaluate the potential of the chambers for high quality plant production and (2) determine the effects of LED light on the growth of some medicinal and ornamental plants as compared with those grown in field or greenhouse conditions.

### 7.3 Material and methods

#### 7.3.1 Growth chamber construction

The growth chamber was 1.0 width×0.6 depth×1.5 m height surrounded by thick blocks of polyurethane foam (3 cm) for insulation (Figure 7.1). A linear temperature gradient of 26–44 °C could be produced by heat flow from the warm copper block to the cool copper block through the walls, floor, and lid of the chamber (each 1 cm thick). Temperature was measured with a digital thermometer accurate to 0.1°C (ATE040, Arvin Tajhiz Espadana Co., Iran).

#### 7.3.2 Light control system

Four sets of the control unit (CU) were independently designed to support 120 LED lights in four growth cabinets. LED arrays (OSRAM, Germany), emitting white (380–760 nm), red (650–665 nm), blue (460–475 nm), and redblue (70 %:30 %) light were affixed to a ceramic and steel support to facilitate efficient heat transfer to the mounting substrate. All the LED lights were 1.0 W (0.25 A of input current) and were driven by a circuit consisted of a standard 2 A power supply delivering 110 VDC to a common bus feeding LED lights (Kaming, Taiwan) in series. Voltage to the arrays that is the illumination intensity was tuned via a selfmade potentiometer up to 500 μmol m\(^{-2}\) s\(^{-1}\) on each separate incubator at the plant leaf surface.
The light intensity was also measured via a light meter (LI-250A, LI-COR Inc., USA) with a $2\pi$ quantum sensor (LI-190, LI-COR Inc., USA) during the plants’ growth. A 0.72 KΩ (50 W) power resistor was placed in the circuit as a current limiter. Input and output capacitors were also provided to improve transient response.

This configuration was repeated for each growth chamber. The CU was outfitted with two 100 mm 12 V fans, one facing into and one facing out of the CU. Each individual LED sheet was also outfitted with a heat sink to ensure adequate cooling. A microcontroller containing a logic control for setting the growth parameters was written in the assembly language of ASM51 (Arvin Tajhiz Espadana Co., Iran) and applied on each growth cabinet to adjust temperature, LED brightness, and light/dark duration (16/8 h). The cabinets were thereafter used to raise some vegetables and potted flowers, which are economically important, not previously reported to be studied under LED illumination and cultivable in indoor environments.
7.3.3 Mint growth evaluation

Five randomly selected rhizomes with the same size of three species of mint, *i.e.* *Mentha spicata* (spear mint), *Mentha piperita* (pepper mint), and *Mentha longifolia* (horse mint) were cultured in plastic pots (10×10 cm) filled with a loam soil amended with cow manure. Mints were collected from the natural habitats of Iran (Heydarizadeh et al. 2013) and planted in the research field (Isfahan University of Technology, Isfahan, Iran, 32° 40′N, 51° 40′E). Rhizomes were planted in pots 1-cm deep. Pots from each mint species were placed in four LED incubators and in the field with three replications.

Growth temperature was set at 25±2 °C similar to the outside average daily temperature. Pots were irrigated once a day with tap water (hardness 13, pH 7.5) and nourished with nutrient solution (1 g/L) containing the main nutritive elements (K, Ca, Mg, N, P, and S) once a week. Grown plants were photographed 60 days after planting, and net CO₂ assimilation was measured by a portable photosynthesis meter (LCi ADC Instruments, UK). The aboveground part of the plants was harvested, and fresh and dry weights were determined. Dried leaves were ground using an electric grinder. The fine powder was mixed with 500-mL distilled water and submitted to distillation for 6 h using a Clevenger-type 5 apparatus (British Pharmacopoeia 1980). The oil fraction was collected and weighted, and the percentage of essential oil was calculated based on dry weight unit. Plants grown in the field at the same time were treated similarly.

7.3.4 Green and potted flower cultivation

Basil (*Ocimum basilicum* L.) and lentil (*Lens culinaris* Medic) were seeds planted and seedlings of primula (*Primula vulgaris* Huds.), marigold (*Calendula officinalis* L.), treasure flower (*Gazania splendens* Moore), and stock plant (*Matthiola incana* (L.) R. Br.) were transplanted into the pots (10×10 cm) filled with horticultural soil. Pots were placed inside a red-blue LED incubator (light: 500 μmol m⁻² s⁻¹; temperature: 25±2 °C; humidity: 60±5 %) and in a greenhouse (as a control) in three replications. Plants were grown to full vegetative growth (for basil and lentil) or full flowering stage (for potted flowers), photographed and compared with plants grown under the greenhouse condition (natural light: 235–1,800 μmol m⁻² s⁻¹; temperature: 25±2 °C; humidity: 60±5 %), in terms of days to full growth/flowering, the number of flowers, and plant height.

7.3.5 Statistical analysis

Plant pots at three replications were arranged in growth cabinets considered as different environments. Data were analyzed, using the Statistical Analysis System (SAS Institute Inc. 1999) program package, according to completely randomized design, and the combined analysis was performed to compare the environments. After an analysis of variance (ANOVA), significant differences among means were determined by least
significant difference (LSD) test \((p<0.05)\). Principle components analysis (PCA) was also performed using SPSS (SPSS Inc. Chicago IL.V. 17).

7.4 Results and discussion

7.4.1 LED light effects on plant growth

To determine the effectiveness of light emitting diodes (LED) irradiation in plant production, economically important plants such as mint, basil, lentil, marigold, primula, treasure flower, and stock plant were grown conventionally (in the greenhouse) or in cabinets equipped with red-blue (70:30 %) LED. Generally, the plants grown under LED light were as healthy as or healthier than those grown in the greenhouse (Figure 7.2). In this study, except for mint, only plant parameters mainly determining the price and marketability of the plants including days to flowering and full growth, dwarfness, and profuse flowering (Roh & Lawson, 1996; Singh 2006) were recorded. As reported in Table 7.2, plants grown under red-blue LED irradiation were significantly smaller in size. Okamoto et al. (1997) also found that stem length in lettuce was decreased significantly with an increase in blue light. Under LED irradiation, basil and lentil reached to full growth, and buds of potted flowers were opened significantly earlier than those raised in the greenhouse. The plants grown for flowering developed significantly more floral buds per plants \((\sim\text{twofold})\) and produced plenty of flowers (Table 7.2).

According to our knowledge about LED lighting effects on plants, it is difficult to detail the reasons for such effects but it could be suggested that the red irradiation in the absence of far-red light is continuously stimulating phytochromes, photoreceptors controlling node elongation (Schaer et al. 1983), floral transition (Boss et al. 2004), and flowering (Runkle & Heins, 2001). On the other hand, blue light inhibits cell growth, and blue light photoreceptors might regulate and change gene expression through which stem elongation is prohibited (Lin 2000; Banerjee & Batschauer, 2005).

In Mentha species, plant fresh weight was significantly higher in the field in \textit{M. piperita}, while in \textit{M. longifolia}, redblue LED had significantly higher values than the other environments including field. For \textit{M. spicata}, there was no significant difference in this regard between red-blue LED incubator and field. However, plant dry weight was significantly greater in the field in all species (Table 7.3).

In the absence of red light, \textit{i.e.} in the incubator with pure blue LED, the fresh growth was significantly lower when compared with pure red LED, except for \textit{M. longifolia}, which did not show significant difference between the two lighting conditions (Table 7.3). In contrast, plant dry weight was not significantly different between the two pure colors incubators; however, both had lower values than that taken from red-blue LED cabinet. It has been reported that the spectral composition of red LED matches with the red absorbance area of chlorophylls \(a\) and \(b\) present in chloroplasts of higher plants (Schoefs 2002; Wang et al. 2007), nevertheless, it has been also reported that blue light has complementary effect. Although, red light may have higher contribution to the plant
Table 7.2. Mean (±SE) comparison of potted plants grown under LED incubator and greenhouse in terms of days to flowering/full growth, the number of flowers and height, indicating the superiority of red-blue LED incubator.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plant</th>
<th>Species</th>
<th>Planting Source</th>
<th>Environment</th>
<th>Days to flowering/full growth</th>
<th>No. Flowers/pot</th>
<th>Height (cm)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Basil</td>
<td>Ocimum basilicum</td>
<td>Seed</td>
<td>Red-Blue LED incubator</td>
<td>25±2.1b*</td>
<td>----</td>
<td>23±5.6b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Greenhouse</td>
<td>50±7.6a</td>
<td>----</td>
<td>47±8.9a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lentil</td>
<td>Lens culinaris</td>
<td>Seed</td>
<td>Red-Blue LED incubator</td>
<td>21±1.5b</td>
<td>----</td>
<td>19±2.5b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primula</td>
<td>Primula vulgaris</td>
<td>Seedling</td>
<td>Red-Blue LED incubator</td>
<td>18±2.2b</td>
<td>20±4.4a</td>
<td>12±2.1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Greenhouse</td>
<td>40±6.3a</td>
<td>10±3.6b</td>
<td>20±5.5a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marigold</td>
<td>Calendula officinalis</td>
<td>Seedling</td>
<td>Red-Blue LED incubator</td>
<td>20±1.5b</td>
<td>30±5.2a</td>
<td>16±1.8b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Greenhouse</td>
<td>50±6.7a</td>
<td>15±6.3b</td>
<td>28±4.8a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Treasure flower</td>
<td>Gazania splendens</td>
<td>Seedling</td>
<td>Red-Blue LED incubator</td>
<td>37±2.6b</td>
<td>15±4.5a</td>
<td>18±2.3b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Greenhouse</td>
<td>60±6.9a</td>
<td>7±2.1b</td>
<td>32±7.2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stock</td>
<td>Matthiola incana</td>
<td>Seedling</td>
<td>Red-Blue LED incubator</td>
<td>28±1.1b</td>
<td>45±4.5a</td>
<td>21±2.3b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Greenhouse</td>
<td>58±8.5a</td>
<td>22±4.8b</td>
<td>36±6.4a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

LED: light Emitting Diode and SE: Standard Error of means

*means followed by different letters in each column in each plant are significantly different according to LSD test (p<0.05)
Table 7.3. Mean comparisons of fresh and dry weight, height, water content, essential oil and photosynthetic rate of mint plants, sampled 60 days after planting, grown in different LED cabinets and field condition.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Incubator/Environment</th>
<th>Mint species</th>
<th>Photosynthesis (μMol CO₂ m⁻² s⁻¹)</th>
<th>Height (cm)</th>
<th>Fresh weight (g/plant)</th>
<th>Dry weight (g/plant)</th>
<th>Dry weight (g) cm⁻¹</th>
<th>Water content (% of fresh weight)</th>
<th>Essential oil content (% of dry weight)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Red LED</strong></td>
<td><em>M. piperita</em></td>
<td>14.28</td>
<td>20.8</td>
<td>16.73</td>
<td>2.24</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>86.61</td>
<td>7.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>M. spicata</em></td>
<td>8.74</td>
<td>24.1</td>
<td>18.72</td>
<td>2.21</td>
<td>0.09</td>
<td>88.20</td>
<td>4.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>M. longifolia</em></td>
<td>5.62</td>
<td>28.1</td>
<td>13.37</td>
<td>1.89</td>
<td>0.07</td>
<td>85.84</td>
<td>4.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Blue LED</strong></td>
<td><em>M. piperita</em></td>
<td>8.83</td>
<td>12.1</td>
<td>6.39</td>
<td>1.27</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>80.04</td>
<td>3.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>M. spicata</em></td>
<td>4.96</td>
<td>12.7</td>
<td>6.24</td>
<td>1.24</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>80.10</td>
<td>5.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>M. longifolia</em></td>
<td>3.21</td>
<td>16.2</td>
<td>10.27</td>
<td>1.95</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td>81.02</td>
<td>3.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Red-Blue LED</strong></td>
<td><em>M. piperita</em></td>
<td>20.70</td>
<td>13.2</td>
<td>27.36</td>
<td>4.45</td>
<td>0.34</td>
<td>83.71</td>
<td>5.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>M. spicata</em></td>
<td>16.17</td>
<td>14.5</td>
<td>25.89</td>
<td>4.17</td>
<td>0.29</td>
<td>83.89</td>
<td>2.60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>M. longifolia</em></td>
<td>6.48</td>
<td>19.4</td>
<td>36.99</td>
<td>6.10</td>
<td>0.31</td>
<td>83.50</td>
<td>4.86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>White LED</strong></td>
<td><em>M. piperita</em></td>
<td>15.27</td>
<td>23.5</td>
<td>16.03</td>
<td>2.67</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>83.33</td>
<td>2.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>M. spicata</em></td>
<td>10.81</td>
<td>26.7</td>
<td>17.85</td>
<td>3.30</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td>81.48</td>
<td>2.58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>M. longifolia</em></td>
<td>4.52</td>
<td>31.9</td>
<td>17.70</td>
<td>2.70</td>
<td>0.08</td>
<td>84.75</td>
<td>3.53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Field</strong></td>
<td><em>M. piperita</em></td>
<td>18.89</td>
<td>52.1</td>
<td>32.90</td>
<td>11.23</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>65.87</td>
<td>1.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>M. spicata</em></td>
<td>14.00</td>
<td>52.1</td>
<td>23.06</td>
<td>7.47</td>
<td>0.14</td>
<td>67.61</td>
<td>0.66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>M. longifolia</em></td>
<td>4.61</td>
<td>59.7</td>
<td>11.60</td>
<td>8.08</td>
<td>0.14</td>
<td>30.34</td>
<td>3.33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em><em>LSD</em> (0.05)</em>*</td>
<td><em>-----</em></td>
<td>2.08</td>
<td>5.65</td>
<td>3.31</td>
<td>1.06</td>
<td>0.03</td>
<td>5.31</td>
<td>0.59</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

LSD: Least Significant Difference; LED: Light Emitting Diode
*means having difference lower than LSD are not significantly different (P<0.05).
photosynthesis, our results indicate that neither pure red nor blue LED is enough to satisfy full growth of mint. Brown et al. (1995) compared pepper (Capsicum annuum L.) plants grown under red LED with similar plants grown under red LED plus blue light emitted from fluorescent lamps. Pepper biomass was reduced when plants were grown under red LED light without blue wavelengths, compared with those grown under supplemental blue lamps.

Therefore, it seems that plant species could not terminate their normal growth under pure red LED light (Yorio et al. 2001). The plants grown under white LED light displayed a significantly higher fresh weight than blue LED light (Table 7.3), but except for M. longifolia, there was no significant difference between white and red LED lights in this respect. White light is a combination of low intensities of red and blue lights and other low efficient light wavelengths, diluting the effect of red-blue light on the net photosynthesis. This may decrease the growth rate of plants illuminated by white light compared with red-blue LED lights.

Among LED lights, the maximum height belonged to the plants grown under white and red, whereas those grown under blue and red-blue were significantly shorter. However, plants grown in the field were taller than those raised under LED lights (Table 7.3). Light quality, especially blue and red wavelengths, controls the opening and closure of stomata (Shimazaki et al. 2007). This may change the amount of water in plant tissues, which in turn can affect plant size and height. As indicated in Table 7.3, the water content in plants grown in the LED cabinets fluctuated from 80.04 to 88.20 %, while the water content of plants raised in the field never exceeded 67.61 %. These data suggest that the shorter height of plants grown under LED compared with field was not related to water shortage. Instead, the constant solicitation of blue photoreceptors is likely the source of reduction of plant size. The results showed that red-blue LED light improved water content and fresh weight of mint plants as good as or even better than field condition. It is worth mentioning that high fresh weight and water content are the two important characteristics of mint for fresh uses.

Since the total biomass production of plants could be influenced by plant size as a function of light quality, the dry weight per each height unit was used as a proxy of yield index after 2 months. The lowest values of 0.08–0.12 g dry weight cm–1 were found under red and white LED irradiation and the highest values of 0.29–0.34 g dry weight cm–1 were observed under red-blue LED. The values obtained for the plants grown in the field were intermediate (Table 7.3). The spectral composition of blue (460–475 nm) and red (650–665 nm) LED fits well to the light absorption spectrum of carotenoids and chlorophyll pigments (Schoefs 2002). Therefore, it was determined whether the increase in dry weight per plant size unit is due to an increase in the photosynthetic activity of the plants.

To test this, the CO₂ fixation was first measured and then principle components analysis (PCA) was performed in order to understand the relation between photosynthesis rate and the other variables (Figure 7.3). Despite the fact that the values of photosynthesis greatly varied with species and light quality, the highest values were always found in M.
*piperita* and the lowest in *M. longifolia* (Table 7.3). The plot of depicting variables based on the two first principle components shows no particular trend between the photosynthetic activity and dry weight, suggesting that the strategy in utilization of fixed CO₂ is different, depending on the light source. However, there was high collinearity between dry weight per plant size and fresh weight with photosynthesis indicating that higher photosynthesis under LED is correlated with increase in fresh and specific dry weight.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Characteristic</th>
<th>Rotated Components</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Photosynthesis</td>
<td>0.021</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Height</td>
<td>0.952</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fresh Weight</td>
<td>0.137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dry Weight</td>
<td>0.811</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dry Weight cm⁻¹</td>
<td>-0.038</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water content</td>
<td>-0.872</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oil Content</td>
<td>-0.659</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>% of variance</td>
<td>45.29</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure 7.3. The collinearity among mint characteristics using principle components analysis.** The plot of principle components shows high trend between the photosynthetic activity with fresh weight and dry weight per plant size indicating that higher photosynthesis under LED is correlated with increase in fresh and specific dry weight.
7.4.2 LED light effects on mint essential oil

It has been well-established that light quality constitutes signals that can trigger metabolic modifications (Liu et al. 2004). To test this with LED light, three mint species grown in growth cabinets each equipped with red, blue, red-blue, or white LED were analyzed for their essential oil content. Our results demonstrated that mint plants of all three species grown under red or red-blue LED light accumulated dramatically higher essential oil content compared with those grown in the field. The maximum increase in oil content was fourfold higher in *M. piperita* grown under red LED light compared with the field. Under blue or white LED light, significant increases in essential oil content were also observed compared with the field except for *M. longifolia* (Table 7.3).

There is limited information on stimulation of the essential oil accumulation in plants with medicinal properties under LED lights. It seems that red LED may affect the metabolic pathways, leading to an increase in essential oil content. The positive effect of LED light on metabolic pathways has not been well-documented; however, there are possible hypotheses about the role of LED light on increasing biosynthesis of some metabolites. Liu et al. (2004) hypothesized that red LED light may repress the expression of negative regulator genes of pigmentation like LeCOP1-LIKE, resulting in plants with dark green leaves and elevated carotenoid levels. It has been also postulated that LED light could affect secretion or stability of or sensitivity to phytohormones, consistent with the improvement in morphogenesis and productivity of the plant in response to LED lighting (Tamulaitis et al. 2005). However, how these changes take place and affect essential oil accumulation is not yet known and warrant further investigations because of their high positive impact on economic extraction and value of essential oil from plants grown under LED lighting.

7.5 Conclusion

The development of human population mostly relies on plant species for nutrition, health, and other human activities. Due to environmental constraints and limited cultivated lands, it is critical to develop indoor systems, allowing significantly higher or at least similar production of yield than outdoor environments. To fulfill this demand, a LED incubator was constructed and evaluated in this study. It offers LED lighting regimes supporting complete plant growth and development. The device provided conditions for a faster growth of mint, lentil and basil, and some ornamental plants in our experiments. LED lights were used because they do not include the drawbacks of traditional nondurable lamp systems. The results of this work demonstrated that the studied vegetables and potted flowers took benefits from LED lighting such as dwarfishness and increased essential oil production. Among the LED light qualities, most of the beneficial effects were best obtained when red-blue illumination was applied. This conclusion agreed with those attained on the growth and morphogenesis of lettuce and radish in the previous research. LED lighting may provide
a novel tool and a new challenge for agricultural research and production alongside its influence on plant morphology and composition. LED lights could be easily integrated into incubators having control systems in which complex lighting programs are facilitated, including selected spectral composition over a growth period or the whole plant developmental stage for improving quality and economic yield of plant species.

7.6 Acknowledgments

The corresponding author would like to thank the Iranian National Elites Foundation and Isfahan University of Technology for the financial support of this research. BS also thanks the University of Le Mans for support. We would also like to express our appreciation to Mr. Ehsan Ataii for the assistance in conducting experiments and Prof. Aghafakhr Mirlohi for the critical review of the preliminary draft of this manuscript.

7.7 References


The effects of light and mycorrhizal symbiosis on growth parameters and essential oil of three mint species

8.1 Abstract

This experiment was conducted to evaluate the effects of light quality and mycorrhizal symbiosis on growth and essential oil of three mint species (Mentha spicata, Mentha piperita and Mentha longifolia). The genotypes were inoculated with three species of AMF including Glomus clarum, G. mosseae and G. etunicatum. The pots were placed inside LED incubators, containing red, blue, red+blue, white and fluorescent lights. Two different light intensity treatments including 150 and 500 μmol photon m⁻² s⁻¹ were applied. Morphological characteristics and essential oil content of plants in each condition were measured and compared. The highest shoot dry weight of plants grown under 150 μmol m⁻² s⁻¹ belonged to M. spicata. Under 500 μmol m⁻² s⁻¹, there were no big differences of shoot fresh and dry weight among three species. Under 150 μmol m⁻² s⁻¹ G. etunicatum was the best species to increase mint dry weight, and white LED was the most effective light in this respect. Blue and red+blue LED increased shoot fresh and dry weight under 500 μmol m⁻² s⁻¹. In general, mint vegetative growth was higher under 150 μmol m⁻² s⁻¹ and essential oil content increased in plants grown under 500 μmol m⁻² s⁻¹. M. piperita and M. longifolia produced more essential oil especially under red and red+blue LED. Among three AMF species, G. mosseae stimulated essential oil content, especially in M. piperita and M. longifolia. In this study plant mycorrhization did not change dramatically growth and essential oil content compare to non-mycorrhizal plants.

8.2 Introduction

Light quality and quantity are among the most important required environmental factors for plant growth and development (Furlan & Fortin, 1977; Ferguson & Menge, 1982). In indoor culture, supplemental lighting is used to increase the photosynthetic daily light integral (total amount of photosynthetically active light received in a day) in temperate climates and to extend the photoperiod to increase growth and hasten...
development of horticultural crops (Suzuki et al. 2011). Semiconductor light-emitting diodes (LEDs) are the most recent and highlighted candidates to reach this aim by increase photosynthesis and therefore crop growth in greenhouse and nursery environments (Girón González, 2012).

In addition of improve in lighting system for indoor culture, improvement of nutrient absorption can also lead to benefit the culture as much as possible. In this respect, arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi have been widely used in agriculture to improve the cultivation of many crops. Naturally, their associations are the predominant form of symbiosis in aromatic plants including Mentha species, with different colonization range (Karagiannidis et al. 2011; del Rosario Cappellari et al. 2015). In particular for mint, there are reports that root colonization by AM fungi improved growth, quality and quantity of essential oils and nutrient uptake, depending upon plant variety (Gupta et al. 2002; Karagiannidis et al. 2011; Adolfsson et al. 2015). Anyway, the effect of AM fungi on plants depends strongly on the extent of colonization (Copetta et al. 2006) and affect by the quality and quantity of light (Furlan & Fortin, 1977; Ferguson & Menge, 1982; Hayman, 1983).

In spite of the LEDs capacity to emit high intensity monochromic light at a wide range of spectrum, but the variation of light spectra used in plant research is still limited, including red, blue and to a lesser extend yellow (Pinho et al. 2007; Lee et al. 2010), green and far-red (Tamulaitis et al. 2005; Stutte et al. 2009; Ilieva et al. 2010; Johkan et al. 2012) independently or in mixed ratios. In addition, there is no report on the effect of LEDs on mycorrhizal colonization in aromatic plants. Therefore, the present study consists of a comparative analysis of the effects induced by three AM fungi under different LED light quality and quantity, on plant growth and essential oil production. This can help for comparing the benefits and drawbacks of different light quality and quantity, and the morphological and physiological responses of plants grown under them, to improve profitability and production of this plant.

8.3 Material and Methods

8.3.1 Mycorrhizal inoculation

In order to assess the effect of Arbuscular Mycorrhiza Fungi (AMF) on growth parameters and essential oil content of mint plant, three different species of the genus Glomus (obtained from Soil and Water Research Institute, Karaj, Iran) including G. etunicatum, G. mosseae and G. clarum were used separately for inoculation of three Mentha species including, M. spicata (Esfahan), M. piperita (Ghazvin), M. longifolia (Hamedan) (see Figure 5.1 in chapter 5).

Three randomly selected stolones with the same size (five-cm) of three species of mint were cultured in plastic pots (10×20 cm), two-third filled with a loam soil amended with compost. Inoculation was done by deposition of 10 g of soil inoculum (containing +
150 spores of AMF + root segments of *Sorghum bicolor* L.), right underneath the stolones, except for the uninoculated controls.

8.3.2 Growth chamber condition

Different light qualities (100% blue LED, 100% red LED, 70% red + 30% blue, white LED (Figure 8.1), warm white florescent cabinet) and two light intensities (150 and 500 μmol m⁻² s⁻¹) were used to set the experiment (temperature: 25±2 °C; humidity: 60±5 %; 16/8 light/dark duration). Incubated plants were placed in each cabinet in a randomized complete block design with three replications. Pots were irrigated once a day with tap water (hardness 13, pH 7.5) and after the first leaf appearance nourished twice a week with nutrient solution (Hoagland & Arnon 1950). The aboveground part of the plants was harvested 60 days after planting and fresh and dry weights, height, branch number and essential oil content were determined as explained before. Also, roots were collected for mycorrhizal colonization assessments, as explained before (see chapter 5, part 5.3.3).

![Figure 8.1. Cabinets with LED irradiations. (A) blue, (B) red, (C) 70% red + 30% blue, (D) white](image-url)
8.3.3 Statistical analysis

Data were analyzed, using the Statistical Analysis System (SAS Institute Inc. 1999) as explained before (see chapter 5, part 5.3.5)

8.4 Results

8.4.1 Development of Mentha species and AMF under different light conditions

Two levels of light intensity (150 and 500 μmol m⁻² s⁻¹) were applied to study the influence of light quality on fungal colonization and plant development.

Growth under 150 μmol m⁻² s⁻¹

Under low light intensity, *M. spicata* had the highest percentage of colonization with mycorrhiza (except under red LED) and also highest vegetative growth including height, branch number, fresh and dry weight, in all wavelengths, except under fluorescent illumination (Table 8.1). The results showed that *M. longifolia* could grow better under fluorescent incubator, compare to the two others. The lowest percentage of colonization belonged to *M. longifolia* under red LED.

Inoculation of Mentha species with mycorrhiza increased their vegetative growth compare to non-mycorrhizal plants and *G. etunicatum* was the most effective mycorrhizal genotype to increase fresh weight (27.5, 13.5 and 14.1 g/plant) and dry weight (4.61, 2.43 and 2.34 g/plant) in *M. spicata*, *M. longifolia* and *M. piperita*, respectively (Table 8.2). In non-mycorrhizal plants these value decreased for fresh weight (14.1, 7.74 and 8.43 g/plant) and dry weight (2.49, 1.48 and 1.45 g/plant) in *M. spicata*, *M. longifolia* and *M. piperita*, respectively.

The positive effects of *G. etunicatum* to increase fresh and dry weight were also observed with the interaction effects between wavelengths and mycorrhizal genotypes (Table 8.3). The most percentage of AMF colonization belonged to *G. etunicatum* in all light conditions mostly under white LED (75.6 %), while the less colonization was also observed under white LED but with the symbiosis of *G. mosseae* (4.34 %).

In general, by taking to account all the interaction between lights, plants and AMF, the results releaved that blue, red+blue and white LED stimulated the colonization and *G. etunicatum* had the highest colonization rate (49.8%) (Table 8.4). In general, *M. spicata* had the highest height, branch number, fresh and dry weight, while the lowest belonged to *M. piperita*. White light significantly increased height, branch number, fresh and dry weight and blue light was the most effective light after white, to increase these traits.
Growth under 500 μmol m$^{-2}$ s$^{-1}$

The same trend was observed for the mycorrhizal colonization under different light conditions, compare to low light (Table 8.1). *M. spicata* had the highest colonization under blue (34.8 %), red + blue (26 %) and white LED (21.0 %), while *M. piperita* had the highest colonization under red LED (30.3 %) and fluorescent (19.2 %). The less percent of colonization observed under red LED in *M. longifolia* (7.17 %). Under blue LED the highest growth characteristics belonged to *M. longifolia* and under other light conditions they vried and did not follow this rythem. For instance, fresh weight under red LED belonged to *M. spicata* (15.4 %) and under red + blue and white LED belonged to *M. piperita* (16.3, 11.2 %, respectively) and under fluorescent belonged to *M. longifolia* (11.8 %).

Under high light, interaction effects between *Mentha* species and mycorrhizal genotypes showed increase of growth in the plants inoculated with mycorrhiza compare to non-mycorrhizal plants, as it was the case also under low light (Table 8.2). *G. etunicatum* effectively increased height (except in *M. piperita*), fresh weight (14.7, 12.7 and 11.9 g/plant) and dry weight (2.51, 2.45 and 1.96 g/plant) in *M. spicata*, *M. longifolia* and *M. piperita*, respectively. *G. etunicatum* had more colonization with plant species in all light conditions, compare to the two other mycorrhiza (Table 8.3) and the highest colonization abtained under white LED (54.5 %). Colonization of *G. clarum* in plants remained weak under different lights (between 9.28-20.6 %), while *G. mosseae* had lower colonization than *G. clarum* in some conditions including red LED (13.0 %) and white LED (8.86 %). The positive effects of *G. etunicatum* to increase fresh and dry weight were observed under red + blue, white and fluorescent light. Surprisingly, under blue LED, non-mycorrhizal plants had fresh and dry weight as high as inoculated plants with *G. clarum*.

In general, the highest colonization was observed in *M. spicata* (23.1%) and blue, red + blue and white LED were the most effective lights to increase colonization percentage (Table 8.4). *G. etunicatum* had the highest colonization (41.4%). White light stimulated branch number in *Mentha* species, while the plants under red light had the lowest number of branch. *M.piperita* had the highest height and branch number (Table 8.4). illumination of plants with *G. etunicatum* increased height, fresh and dry weight, as well as under 150 μmol m$^{-2}$ s$^{-1}$. Red+blue was the most effective lights to increase fresh and dry weight in plants.

Comparison between two light intensities releaved that vegetative growth of *Mentha* species was higher under 150 μmol m$^{-2}$ s$^{-1}$. We observed that fungal colonization, height and fresh weight were significantly higher under low light intensity compare to high light (Table 8.4). In this respect the traits increased by 13.3, 53 and 10.9 %, respectively. Branch number was higher under high light (44.5 %) and there was no significant difference in dry weight between two light intensities.
8.4.2 Essential oil content under different lights

In both low light and high light intensities plants behaved differently under different wavelengths and none of them could produce detectable essential oil under fluorescent light (Table 8.1). Blue LED increased essential oil content in *M. spicata*, while red and white lights increased oil content mostly in *M. piperita*. This result was observed under low and high light conditions.

The most essential oil content in *M. longifolia* and *M. piperita* achieved with inoculation by *G. etunicatum* under both low light (3.38 and 5.41 %) and high light (2.66 and 4.28 %), respectively (Table 8.2).

Interaction between light and mycorrhizal genotypes showed that *G. mosseae* significantly increased essential oil content in all wavelengths and both light intensities (Table 8.3). Plants grown under fluorescent remained weak with undetectable essential oil production (Table 8.4 and figure 8.1).

In general, by comparison of interactions between experimental components, *i.e.* light, *Mentha* species and mycorrhizal genotypes, we observed that essential oil content was higher under 500 μmol m$^{-2}$ s$^{-1}$, around 37.1 %, compared to 150 μmol m$^{-2}$ s$^{-1}$ (Table 8.4). There was no significant difference between *Mentha* species for essential oil production under low light, while *M. longifolia* and *M. piperita* produced more essential oil under high light intensity. Red LED was the best wavelength and *G. mosseae* was the best mycorrhizal genotype to increase essential oil. Generally, the production of non-mycorrhizal plants did not differ with the plant inoculated with *G. clarum* and *G. etunicatum*.

8.5. Discussion

The inoculated plants displayed a higher vegetative growth compared to control (non-inoculated plants), under two light intensities (Table 8.4). Studies about arbuscular mycorrhizal (AM) fungi with aromatic plants interaction have shown increases in plant growth and essential oil production (Copetta et al. 2006; Khaosaad et al. 2006; Zeng et al. 2013; del Rosario Cappellari et al. 2015). The effects of mycorrhization by *Glomus* species in increase of height, fresh and dry weight in aromatic plants including *M. arvensis* (Gupta et al. 2002), *M. spicata* (Bagheri et al. 2015), *M. piperita* (del Rosario Cappellari et al. 2015), *Ocimum basilicum* (Zolfaghari et al. 2013), *Glycyrrhiza glabra* L. (Yadav et al. 2013), *Origanum majoranum* (Devi & Reddy, 2002) has been reported.

Anyway they are some conflicts between several studies that show different plant species may have different responses to the same light wavelength. For instance, in the study performed by Okamoto et al. (1997) on lettuce, plant height significantly decreased under blue LED, while in another study plant height of *Perilla frutescens* (from Lamiaceae family) increased under blue LED compared to red, red + blue LED and white fluorescent light (Ogawa et al. 2012). The decrease of height can be due to the inhibition effects of blue light on cell growth and also blue light photoreceptors might regulate and
change gene expression through which stem elongation is prohibited (as it is described in chapter 7; see also Huché-Thélier et al. 2016).

Mycorrhization leads to increase plant growth based on three main functions of the AM fungi: (i) stimulation of plant development by impacting the phytohormone balance; (ii) enhancement of plant fitness by increasing resistance or tolerance to biotic and abiotic stress; and (iii) improvement of plant nutrition by supplying mineral nutrients, particularly inorganic phosphate (Smith & Read, 2008, Adolsson et al. 2015). It seems that allocation of primary production differs depending on the growth condition, plant species and AM fungal species (Kaschuk et al. 2009; Adolsson et al. 2015).

Inoculated plants grown under 150 μmol m\(^{-2}\) s\(^{-1}\) had higher height, percent of colonization and fresh weight compare to the plants grown under 500 μmol m\(^{-2}\) s\(^{-1}\) (Table 8.4). The response of plants to colonization by AMF depends mainly on the host plant and fungal species, as well as environmental conditions, such as light intensity, nutrient levels, temperature, etc. (Smith & Smith 1996). There is no report about the effect of different LED quality and quantity on mycorrhizal colonization and growth parameters of higher plants. Increasing the intensity of fluorescent lamps, stimulated growth in onion (Hayman, 1974). Colonization of Sudan grass, inoculated by Glomus fasciculatum, as measured by root infection and sporulation, increased with increasing light intensity (Ferguson & Menge, 1982).

According to the results of this study, each genotype of mycorrhiza was more effective in some conditions and by changing the light intensity or wavelength the efficiency of mycorrhiza could decrease. In addition to environmental condition and plant species, the importance of AM fungal species is also important for plant production (Kaschuk et al. 2009). For instance in our study, in some conditions, non-mycorrhizal plants had better growth than inoculated plants (Table 8.4). One reason might be related to the condition of our experiments that plants did not face water deficiency, while mycorrhizal fungi are more effective under drought, for host plant (Augé et al. 2015; Ruiz-Lozano et al. 2015).

LEDs stimulated plants growth and essential oil production more than fluorescent light. Indeed, Positive effects of different LED quality on plant production has been reported in several studies (Avercheva et al. 2012; Ogawa, et al. 2012; Dayani et al. 2016). Essential oil content of mycorrhizal plants increased under 500 compare to 150. It has been reported that isoprenoids are key components of the antioxidant defense system of plants facing severe excess light stress (Brunetti et al. 2015). Red LED stimulated essential oil production more than the other LED lights.

There is no information on stimulation of the essential oil accumulation in mycorrhizal plants with medicinal properties under LED lights. For more details on the effect of red light on essential oil production of plants see chapter 7, part 7.4.2.
Table 8.1. Mean comparison of light (quality and quantity) and Mentha species on morphophenological characteristics and essential oil content.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Light quality</th>
<th>Mentha species</th>
<th>Colonization (%)</th>
<th>Height (cm)</th>
<th>Branch number</th>
<th>Dry weight (g/plant)</th>
<th>Fresh weight (g/plant)</th>
<th>Essential oil content (%)</th>
<th>Colonization (%)</th>
<th>Height (cm)</th>
<th>Branch number</th>
<th>Dry weight (g/plant)</th>
<th>Fresh weight (g/plant)</th>
<th>Essential oil content (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Blue</td>
<td>M.spicata</td>
<td>41.8a</td>
<td>52.7a</td>
<td>11.2a</td>
<td>3.89a</td>
<td>20.4a</td>
<td>2.46a</td>
<td>34.8a</td>
<td>14.8c</td>
<td>7.83b</td>
<td>2.30ab</td>
<td>11.8b</td>
<td>3.71a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M.longifolia</td>
<td>14.9b</td>
<td>25.4c</td>
<td>2.66c</td>
<td>1.68c</td>
<td>8.67c</td>
<td>2.24b</td>
<td>11.9c</td>
<td>36.1a</td>
<td>11.0a</td>
<td>2.80a</td>
<td>15.4a</td>
<td>3.65b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M.piperita</td>
<td>13.5bc</td>
<td>45.0b</td>
<td>5.0b</td>
<td>2.35b</td>
<td>12.5b</td>
<td>1.95c</td>
<td>18.6bc</td>
<td>16.4b</td>
<td>1.91c</td>
<td>1.58c</td>
<td>7.64c</td>
<td>3.29c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red</td>
<td>M.spicata</td>
<td>15.5a</td>
<td>51.5a</td>
<td>10.3a</td>
<td>2.08a</td>
<td>16.6a</td>
<td>2.33b</td>
<td>15.3b</td>
<td>19.7c</td>
<td>7.33a</td>
<td>2.00ab</td>
<td>15.4a</td>
<td>3.51b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M.longifolia</td>
<td>9.36c</td>
<td>30.2c</td>
<td>2.41b</td>
<td>0.89c</td>
<td>7.03c</td>
<td>2.12c</td>
<td>7.17c</td>
<td>27.9b</td>
<td>4.29b</td>
<td>1.60c</td>
<td>9.26c</td>
<td>3.41c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M.piperita</td>
<td>34.0b</td>
<td>47.4b</td>
<td>2.16b</td>
<td>1.05b</td>
<td>8.17b</td>
<td>3.34a</td>
<td>30.3a</td>
<td>33.7a</td>
<td>4.50b</td>
<td>2.67a</td>
<td>14.3b</td>
<td>4.92a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red+Blue</td>
<td>M.spicata</td>
<td>36.3a</td>
<td>45.7a</td>
<td>5.08a</td>
<td>3.42a</td>
<td>21.0a</td>
<td>1.90b</td>
<td>26.0a</td>
<td>21.5c</td>
<td>10.3b</td>
<td>2.92a</td>
<td>15.8b</td>
<td>3.01b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M.longifolia</td>
<td>18.1b</td>
<td>24.7c</td>
<td>3.41b</td>
<td>1.78b</td>
<td>10.9b</td>
<td>2.64a</td>
<td>13.8c</td>
<td>28.8b</td>
<td>13.2a</td>
<td>2.31ab</td>
<td>13.4c</td>
<td>4.12a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M.piperita</td>
<td>15.8b</td>
<td>36.7b</td>
<td>5.33b</td>
<td>1.95b</td>
<td>21.2a</td>
<td>1.61c</td>
<td>16.7bc</td>
<td>33.7a</td>
<td>5.66c</td>
<td>2.00b</td>
<td>16.3a</td>
<td>2.67c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White</td>
<td>M.spicata</td>
<td>25.8a</td>
<td>63.7a</td>
<td>10.4a</td>
<td>4.93a</td>
<td>29.3a</td>
<td>1.61c</td>
<td>21.0abc</td>
<td>25.1a</td>
<td>9.66b</td>
<td>2.00ab</td>
<td>10.1b</td>
<td>2.78bc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M.longifolia</td>
<td>15.8c</td>
<td>30.4c</td>
<td>4.25b</td>
<td>1.53c</td>
<td>9.35c</td>
<td>1.74c</td>
<td>13.9c</td>
<td>18.8c</td>
<td>19.6a</td>
<td>1.45c</td>
<td>8.09c</td>
<td>2.85b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M.piperita</td>
<td>24.2bc</td>
<td>49.7b</td>
<td>10.2a</td>
<td>2.51b</td>
<td>49.7b</td>
<td>1.88c</td>
<td>19.6c</td>
<td>24.2ab</td>
<td>4.41c</td>
<td>2.22a</td>
<td>11.2a</td>
<td>3.08b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluorescent</td>
<td>M.spicata</td>
<td>22.1a</td>
<td>24.4c</td>
<td>1.75b</td>
<td>1.67b</td>
<td>24.4c</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>18.1b</td>
<td>24.4c</td>
<td>6.33b</td>
<td>1.80b</td>
<td>7.68b</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M.longifolia</td>
<td>16.9c</td>
<td>33.1a</td>
<td>2.41a</td>
<td>2.62a</td>
<td>33.1a</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>15.4c</td>
<td>33.1a</td>
<td>10.6a</td>
<td>2.87a</td>
<td>11.8a</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M.piperita</td>
<td>21.0bc</td>
<td>29.0b</td>
<td>1.95b</td>
<td>1.03bc</td>
<td>29.0b</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>19.2a</td>
<td>29.0b</td>
<td>2.70c</td>
<td>1.00c</td>
<td>4.10c</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* means followed by different letters in each column in each plant are significantly different according to LSD test (p<0.05)
Table 8.2. Mean comparison of *Mentha* species and mycorrhizal genotypes under different light intensities on morphphenological characteristics and essential oil content.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mentha species</th>
<th>Mycorrhiza species</th>
<th>Colonization (%)</th>
<th>Height (cm)</th>
<th>Branch number</th>
<th>Dry weight (g/plant)</th>
<th>Fresh weight (g/plant)</th>
<th>Essential oil content (%)</th>
<th>Colonization (%)</th>
<th>Height (cm)</th>
<th>Branch number</th>
<th>Dry weight (g/plant)</th>
<th>Fresh weight (g/plant)</th>
<th>Essential oil content (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>M. spicata</em></td>
<td><em>G. clarum</em></td>
<td>18.2&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>44.7&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>12.5&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>2.33&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>14.0&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1.50&lt;sup&gt;bc&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>16.3&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>22.0&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>9.49&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1.99&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>11.7&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>2.45&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>G. etunicatum</em></td>
<td>55.5&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>55.7&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>2.53&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>4.61&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>27.5&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1.62&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>40.9&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>27.4&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>9.26&lt;sup&gt;ab&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>2.51&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>14.7&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>2.62&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>G. mosseae</em></td>
<td>39.5&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>41.9&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>4.13&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>3.36&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>19.7&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>3.59&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>35.0&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>18.7&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>7.20&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1.87&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>11.3&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>2.25&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Control</td>
<td>0.0&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>48.0&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1.86&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>2.49&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>14.1&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1.59&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>0.0&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>16.3&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>7.26&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1.50&lt;sup&gt;bc&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>10.9&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>2.69&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>M. longifolia</em></td>
<td><em>G. clarum</em></td>
<td>8.89&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>28.4&lt;sup&gt;bc&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>6.86&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1.10&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>6.12&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1.75&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>8.10&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>24.5&lt;sup&gt;cd&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>11.6&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>2.05&lt;sup&gt;ab&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>11.2&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>2.77&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>G. etunicatum</em></td>
<td>36.4&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>29.1&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1.86&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>2.43&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>13.5&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1.94&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>29.9&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>33.2&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>9.63&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>2.45&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>12.7&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>3.15&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>G. mosseae</em></td>
<td>14.6&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>26.5&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>2.13&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1.79&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>10.0&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>3.38&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>11.7&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>31.5&lt;sup&gt;ab&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>11.4&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1.43&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>10.7&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>5.41&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Control</td>
<td>0.0&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>31.0&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1.26&lt;sup&gt;cd&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1.48&lt;sup&gt;bc&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>7.74&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1.67&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>0.0&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>26.7&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>14.2&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1.31&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>11.7&lt;sup&gt;ab&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>2.70&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>M. piperita</em></td>
<td><em>G. clarum</em></td>
<td>20.3&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>36.9&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>12.9&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1.26&lt;sup&gt;bc&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>7.14&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1.87&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>20.0&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>28.4&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>3.86&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1.37&lt;sup&gt;ab&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>9.58&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>2.98&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>G. etunicatum</em></td>
<td>57.6&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>43.8&lt;sup&gt;ab&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>2.80&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>2.34&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>14.1&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1.89&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>53.2&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>25.7&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>4.66&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1.96&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>11.9&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>3.11&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>G. mosseae</em></td>
<td>8.91&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>45.8&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>2.40&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>2.05&lt;sup&gt;ab&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>12.2&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>2.66&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>10.3&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>27.9&lt;sup&gt;ab&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>3.66&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1.50&lt;sup&gt;ab&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>11.3&lt;sup&gt;ab&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>4.28&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Control</td>
<td>0.0&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>42.2&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1.63&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1.45&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>8.43&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>2.36&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>0.0&lt;sup&gt;d&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>27.6&lt;sup&gt;ab&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>3.16&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>1.00&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>10.2&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>3.59&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* means followed by different letters in each column in each plant are significantly different according to LSD test (p<0.05)
Table 8.3. Mean comparison of light (quality and quantity) and mycorrhizal genotypes on morphophenological characteristics and essential oil content.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Light quality</th>
<th>Mycorrhiza species</th>
<th>Colonization (%)</th>
<th>Height (cm)</th>
<th>Branch number</th>
<th>Dry weight (g/plant)</th>
<th>Fresh weight (g/plant)</th>
<th>Essential oil content (%)</th>
<th>150 μmol m² s⁻¹</th>
<th>500 μmol m² s⁻¹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blue</td>
<td><em>G. clarum</em></td>
<td>13.6c</td>
<td>33.8d</td>
<td>20.1a</td>
<td>1.61c</td>
<td>8.28c</td>
<td>1.57d</td>
<td>17.5c</td>
<td>20.5bc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>G. etunicatum</em></td>
<td>45.0a</td>
<td>43.3b</td>
<td>2.33b</td>
<td>3.12a</td>
<td>16.5a</td>
<td>1.88b</td>
<td>36.6a</td>
<td>24.6ab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>G. mosseae</em></td>
<td>35.0b</td>
<td>38.4c</td>
<td>1.11ed</td>
<td>3.21a</td>
<td>16.9a</td>
<td>3.78a</td>
<td>32.9b</td>
<td>25.0a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Control</td>
<td>0.0d</td>
<td>48.7a</td>
<td>1.66c</td>
<td>2.61b</td>
<td>13.8b</td>
<td>1.63c</td>
<td>0.0d</td>
<td>19.6c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red</td>
<td><em>G. clarum</em></td>
<td>21.6c</td>
<td>44.1b</td>
<td>14.3a</td>
<td>1.16b</td>
<td>9.21b</td>
<td>1.96d</td>
<td>20.6c</td>
<td>22.6d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>G. etunicatum</em></td>
<td>31.8a</td>
<td>50.7a</td>
<td>1.77c</td>
<td>2.39a</td>
<td>18.8a</td>
<td>2.02c</td>
<td>27.6a</td>
<td>25.8b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>G. mosseae</em></td>
<td>25.0b</td>
<td>38.1c</td>
<td>2.66b</td>
<td>0.99c</td>
<td>7.72b</td>
<td>4.12b</td>
<td>22.2b</td>
<td>28.1b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Control</td>
<td>0.0d</td>
<td>39.3c</td>
<td>1.11ed</td>
<td>0.82c</td>
<td>6.63d</td>
<td>2.29b</td>
<td>0.0d</td>
<td>31.6a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red+Blue</td>
<td><em>G. etunicatum</em></td>
<td>54.8a</td>
<td>42.2a</td>
<td>3.77b</td>
<td>3.84a</td>
<td>23.6a</td>
<td>1.78c</td>
<td>48.3a</td>
<td>34.4a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>G. mosseae</em></td>
<td>20.8b</td>
<td>39.3b</td>
<td>3.77b</td>
<td>2.69b</td>
<td>16.6b</td>
<td>2.71b</td>
<td>13.0c</td>
<td>26.4c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Control</td>
<td>0.0d</td>
<td>37.4c</td>
<td>1.55c</td>
<td>1.52c</td>
<td>9.44c</td>
<td>1.82bc</td>
<td>0.0d</td>
<td>23.4d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>White</td>
<td><em>G. etunicatum</em></td>
<td>75.6a</td>
<td>48.1b</td>
<td>2.44c</td>
<td>3.77a</td>
<td>23.5a</td>
<td>1.58c</td>
<td>54.5a</td>
<td>28.8b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>G. mosseae</em></td>
<td>43.4a</td>
<td>44.4d</td>
<td>4.44b</td>
<td>3.87a</td>
<td>22.5a</td>
<td>2.23a</td>
<td>8.86b</td>
<td>20.7b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Control</td>
<td>0.0d</td>
<td>53.1a</td>
<td>1.77d</td>
<td>2.20b</td>
<td>13.1c</td>
<td>1.75b</td>
<td>0.0d</td>
<td>19.4c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fluorescent</td>
<td><em>G. etunicatum</em></td>
<td>18.1c</td>
<td>31.7a</td>
<td>2.22a</td>
<td>1.43bc</td>
<td>5.85c</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>12.5c</td>
<td>31.7a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>G. mosseae</em></td>
<td>41.9a</td>
<td>30.1ab</td>
<td>1.66b</td>
<td>2.52a</td>
<td>10.3a</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>39.9a</td>
<td>30.1ab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Control</td>
<td>0.0d</td>
<td>23.6c</td>
<td>1.83b</td>
<td>1.88b</td>
<td>7.59b</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0.0d</td>
<td>23.6c</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* means followed by different letters in each column in each plant are significantly different according to LSD test (p<0.05)
Table 8.4. Mean comparison of light quality and quantity, mint species and mycorrhizal genotypes on morphophenological characteristics and essential oil content.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>150 µmol m$^{-2}$ s$^{-1}$</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th>500 µmol m$^{-2}$ s$^{-1}$</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Colonization (%)</td>
<td>Height (cm)</td>
<td>Branch number</td>
<td>Dry weight (g/plant)</td>
<td>Fresh weight (g/plant)</td>
<td>Essential oil content (%)</td>
<td>Colonization (%)</td>
<td>Height (cm)</td>
<td>Branch number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genotype</td>
<td>M.spicata</td>
<td>28.3$^a$</td>
<td>47.6$^a$</td>
<td>7.76$^a$</td>
<td>3.20$^a$</td>
<td>18.8$^a$</td>
<td>2.07$^a$</td>
<td>23.1$^a$</td>
<td>21.1$^c$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M.longifolia</td>
<td>21.7$^b$</td>
<td>42.2$^b$</td>
<td>4.94$^b$</td>
<td>1.77$^b$</td>
<td>10.5$^b$</td>
<td>2.19$^a$</td>
<td>20.9$^b$</td>
<td>27.4$^b$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M.piperita</td>
<td>15.0$^c$</td>
<td>28.8$^c$</td>
<td>3.03$^c$</td>
<td>1.70$^b$</td>
<td>9.36$^c$</td>
<td>2.19$^a$</td>
<td>12.4$^c$</td>
<td>28.9$^a$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light quality</td>
<td>Blue</td>
<td>23.4$^a$</td>
<td>41.0$^b$</td>
<td>6.30$^b$</td>
<td>2.64$^b$</td>
<td>13.9$^b$</td>
<td>2.22$^b$</td>
<td>23.4$^a$</td>
<td>22.5$^b$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Red</td>
<td>19.6$^b$</td>
<td>43.0$^b$</td>
<td>4.97$^c$</td>
<td>1.34$^e$</td>
<td>10.6$^c$</td>
<td>2.60$^a$</td>
<td>19.6$^b$</td>
<td>27.0$^a$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Blue+Red</td>
<td>23.4$^a$</td>
<td>36.7$^c$</td>
<td>4.61$^c$</td>
<td>2.38$^c$</td>
<td>14.7$^b$</td>
<td>2.05$^c$</td>
<td>23.4$^a$</td>
<td>28.0$^a$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>White</td>
<td>21.9$^a$</td>
<td>47.9$^a$</td>
<td>8.30$^a$</td>
<td>2.99$^a$</td>
<td>18.0$^a$</td>
<td>1.74$^d$</td>
<td>21.9$^a$</td>
<td>22.7$^b$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fluorescent</td>
<td>20.0$^b$</td>
<td>28.8$^d$</td>
<td>2.04$^d$</td>
<td>1.77$^d$</td>
<td>7.24$^d$</td>
<td>0.0$^e$</td>
<td>20.0$^b$</td>
<td>28.8$^a$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mycorrhiza</td>
<td>G.clarum</td>
<td>15.8$^c$</td>
<td>36.7$^d$</td>
<td>4.1$^a$</td>
<td>1.56$^d$</td>
<td>9.10$^d$</td>
<td>1.70$^b$</td>
<td>14.8$^c$</td>
<td>25.0$^{bc}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>G.etunicatum</td>
<td>49.8$^b$</td>
<td>42.9$^a$</td>
<td>2.40$^c$</td>
<td>3.12$^a$</td>
<td>18.4$^a$</td>
<td>1.81$^b$</td>
<td>41.4$^a$</td>
<td>28.7$^a$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>G.mossae</td>
<td>21.0$^b$</td>
<td>38.0$^c$</td>
<td>2.88$^b$</td>
<td>2.40$^b$</td>
<td>14.0$^b$</td>
<td>3.21$^a$</td>
<td>19.0$^b$</td>
<td>26.0$^b$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Control</td>
<td>0.0$^d$</td>
<td>40.4$^b$</td>
<td>1.58$^d$</td>
<td>1.81$^c$</td>
<td>10.1$^c$</td>
<td>1.87$^b$</td>
<td>0.0$^d$</td>
<td>23.5$^c$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean</td>
<td></td>
<td>21.7±3.2$^a$</td>
<td>39.5±1.8$^b$</td>
<td>4.41±1.0$^b$</td>
<td>2.22±0.1$^a$</td>
<td>12.9±1.1$^a$</td>
<td>1.97±0.2$^a$</td>
<td>18.8±2.7$^b$</td>
<td>25.8±0.8$^p$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* means followed by different letters in each column in each plant are significantly different according to LSD test (p<0.05)
8.6 Acknowledgment

The authors are grateful to Dr. Morteza Zahedi, Dr. Mohammad Reza Sabzalian, Mr. Ehsan Ataii and Isfahan University of Technology (IUT) for their support.

8.7 References


Conclusion of part 2

Regardless the climate and the place of harvesting, the mint accessions were moderately mycorrhized suggesting that the abiotic component of the environment had not a crucial influence on this process. This conclusion is important because it allows the extrapolation of our data to other accessions not studied here.

The study of monochromatic lights delivered by LEDs on growth and EO production in *Mentha* species revealed differential impact on the different accessions. Regardless light intensity, the highest EO production was obtained under red LED light while under this lighting condition, CO$_2$ fixation, and therefore growth, was similar to that obtained with white light or sunlight. Interestingly, red+blue lighting gave worse results in terms of EO production when compared to red light and dry weight when compared to sunlight while CO$_2$ fixation was the highest.

The study of the interactions between lighting conditions and mycorrhization on the different accessions, revealed that under low light intensity *M. spicata* had the highest growth regardless the light wavelengths but under high light the highest growth depended on the lighting wavelength for the *Mentha* accessions. Regarding the possibility to combine abiotic and biotic stress to enhance either growth or EO production, we found that *G. mosseae* was the only mycorrhizal genotype triggering an increase of EO production (compared to nonmycorrhizal plants), and this independantly of the light intensity. However, light intensity appears as an important factor in the control of EO production. Indeed, we found that high light increased EO production in *Mentha* accessions more than low light. This result suggests that the additional photons ‘inform’ the plants about the need to increase EO production through a mechanism that remains so far elusive. We can however hypothesize that red light triggers a carbon reorientation probably through *de novo* expression of genes involved in the carbon metabolism. We have seen in part one that many of the enzymes involved in this metabolism are coded by isogenes, for which expression was dependant of environmental factors. Alternatively, red light could enhance expression of genes encoding key enzymes of the terpenoid pathway, thus enhancing the flux of carbon into this pathway. Another possibility would reside in a direct activation of already present enzymes by red light. Altogether, our results demonstrate that the interaction between biotic and abiotic environmental factors may strongly impacts growth and development of plants.
In this study, the main aim was to investigate the effects of different lighting or illumination conditions (including quality and quantity) on the reorientation of the carbon metabolism toward the production of secondary metabolites in unicellular and multicellular organisms. Accordingly, we set up two main experiments on diatom (*P. tricornutum*) and land plant (*Mentha* sp.). In diatom we used molecular, biochemical and physiological approaches to obtain new information on the studied processes in *P. tricornutum* cells grown under different fluorescent intensities. In land plants, morphological, biochemical and physiological approaches have been used to characterize the impact of AM and/or monochromatic and polychromatic lights delivered by LED on growth, development and EO production of different *Mentha* species, originally collected in the natural environment in Iran.

Our results showed that the impact of different light intensities on cell development, physiology and gene regulation of *P. tricornutum* depends on growth phases i.e. the cell physiological state. Low photon abundance was a limiting factor for growth, and in all light conditions C-deficiency was mostly responsible for the occurrence of plateau phase in the cultures.

Because cell physiology is affected by growth conditions, all the measurements performed in the same physiological states. This allowed us to conclude that the obtained results are just related to the impact of light and are mostly independent of the physiological states of cells. Accordingly, physiological and molecular data showed that the effects of ML and HL on diatom cells were similar but quite different from LL. One of the main results of this study was the orientation of carbon mostly toward pyruvate formation and in some cases (mostly in HL phase 3) to PEP formation. In this study pyruvate was highlighted as a hub intermediate that is used to synthesis high value molecules including lipids and proteins. Lipid production was higher under LL phase 1 but in phase 2 and 3 the relative amount of chrysolaminarin was higher compare to ML and HL. Lipid production increases under ML in phase 2 and 3, while protein amount was higher under HL compare to LL and ML.

PEP is also an important intermediate to form aromatic compounds, including amino acids via the shikimate pathway. This pathway was activated mostly under HL phase 3, compare to ML. It is difficult to firmly conclude and interpret this result without a quantification of aromatic compounds. The measurement of the products of this pathway
may help us to find better correlation between enzyme activity and aromatic amino acids synthesis.

We suggest to continue the study of *P. tricornutum* by: (1) using bioreactor technology to avoid controlling the CO$_2$ limitation and study more deeply molecular biology and biochemistry of diatom cells in the same physiological state under stress conditions (2) focusing more deeply on fatty acid biosynthesis and chrysolaminarin pathways using a more global approach of the gene/isogenes of different enzymes to understand better the compensation of target genes toward desired products, (3) qualify lipid classes in cells grown under the three light conditions to estimate the percentage of saturated and unsaturated fatty acids. This type of information is of importance in the frame of algal biotechnology because the type of lipid production would condition the type of usage of the produced lipids (biofuels, nutrition, cosmetic etc), (4) visualize the intracellular lipid bodies and also cell size in different growth phases to determine if the increase in lipid synthesis could be correlated to the cell size, the size and/or number of lipid bodies, (5) measurement of terpenoid content of diatom cells to conclude better the activation of shikimate pathway with the results of gene expression of related enzymes and (6) growing diatom cells under different LED wavelengths and intensities to compare the results with what we obtained using fluorescent light and with other organisms such as land plants.

The results of the effect of various LED lights on plants productivity revealed that red+blue and red LED illuminations stimulated vegetative growth and essential oil production, respectively, more than the other light tested. Plant growth under fluorescent light remained weak without producing detectable essential oil. We concluded that LED could improve economic characteristics of *Mentha* species through metabolic stimulation(s).

In our culture conditions, mycorrhization changed the reaction of plants to different LED wavelengths. These changes were also depending on the light intensities (150 or 500 μmol m$^{-2}$ s$^{-1}$). Interestingly, under these two light intensities, red light (650–665 nm) was the most effective to stimulate essential oil synthesis in mycorrhizal plants. The reactions of mycorrhizal plants differed under two light intensities in term of vegetative growth. Under 150 μmol m$^{-2}$ s$^{-1}$ white LED and under 500 μmol m$^{-2}$ s$^{-1}$ red and red+blue LED were the most affective lights to stimulate plant vegetative growth. Indeed, plants vegetative growth was higher under 150 μmol m$^{-2}$ s$^{-1}$ while EO synthesis increased under 500 μmol m$^{-2}$ s$^{-1}$, showing that light intensity also triggers the reorientation of the carbon metabolism toward the production of secondary metabolites in mint, clearly, blue and red photoreceptors seemed involved. At present it is however difficult to conclude further on their nature and their involvement in the light intensity control on the reorientation. This is essentially due to the fact that the effects of both light quality and quantity look species dependent and that there are nowhere else reports on mint (see also Huchier-Thélier et al. 2016).

In this study, *G. mosseae* stimulated EO content, and red LED stimulated mycorrhizal colonization more than the other lights. We conclude that in this experiment red LED
was the most stressful condition for *Mentha* species, because of the most essential oil synthesis and most AMF colonization under this light.

Some questions required to be answered to understand the role of light quality and quantity on EO production: (1) is increasing the EO related to increase of primary metabolites synthesis followed by more pumping of glucose inside secretory cells of PGT? (2) is the expression of genes/isogenes in MEP pathways of secretory cells related to the light quality and/or quantity or their expression is independent of light? (3) what is the relation between light quality or quantity with isoprenoid pathway activation? and (4) what are the photoreceptor(s) involved and in case of several how do they cooperate?

Further steps for answering these questions could be (1) a study of monoterpenoid pathway inside trichomes at the level of enzymes, from MEP pathway to EO synthesis. (2) focus on the most effective and the less effective lights to see the changes in gene expression of the pathways. In this respect red LED and fluorescent can be the first candidates, because of their most and less stimulation effects, respectively, on EO synthesis. (3) the same studies at the level of enzymes on inoculated plants with *G. mosseae* to understand if the fungus affects the expression of genes encoding key enzymes in monoterpenoid pathway or they have indirect effects, such as supporting the plant for more primary production by different ways including exploratory capacity for mineral nutrients or increasing the level of phytohormons such as abscisic acid, auxins, gibberellins, cytokinins, etc; (4) test the activity of phytochrome and blue-light receptors using reduced adequate irradiations and (5) analysis of EO components to see which wavelength can stimulate production of oil with better quality.

To summarize all, in this study we handled two very different organisms - a unicellular diatom and a multicellular land plant - and studied how light was regulating the reorientation of the carbon metabolism toward the production of secondary metabolites. For technical reasons, lack of enough scientific data and time constrains, it was not possible to study each model with similar tools and details. Nevertheless, one main conclusion of this study is that the metabolism of both models is arranged and reorganized under stress conditions in such a way that pyruvate, a platform molecule serving for the synthesis of secondary metabolites such as terpenoids and lipids. This conclusion seems to be a general feature in microalgae because accumulation of terpenoids was found in other types of algae (*e.g.*, green algae: Tocquin et al. 2012; Kopecky et al. 2000; haptophytes: Bougaran et al. 2012; Guihéneuf et al. 2015; red algae: Khotimchenko & Yakovleva, 2005) but surely should also be modulated because mint taxons are very sensitive to lighting modifications and seem not able to react to light stress (*e.g.*, Kopecky et al. 2000). During this work we obtained elements suggesting that the metabolism of *P. tricornutum* might be flexible as we could observe over-expression of gene leading to the production of aromatic compounds. Such flexibility seems to have been lost in land plants.

Another finding of this work is that the pathway activated would partly depend on the physiological state of the cell. This probably is also the case for the secretory cells of
PGT and their production is also modulated by the environmental conditions: light quality and mycorrhizal fungus. The impact of these factors on marine microalgae is only started and already similar features can be found. For instance, in the *Isochrysis*, blue light irradiation, combined to change in the dilution ratio increased the production of lipids (Marchetti et al. 2013). A careful check of the references indicates that the effects of monochromatic light on microalgae are species dependent (Darko et al. 2014). Beside the well known fungus-microalga symbiosis forming aerian lichens, for which the association seemed obligatory, the only reported optional symbiosis between an eukaryotic microalga (Chlamydomonas) and a fungus (Alternaria) is artificial and requires the presence of a bacterium (Azotobacter) (Lőrincz et al. 2010). In this association, the chlorophyll quota is higher than in the control cultures and a reduced excretion of amino acids. The increase of chlorophyll quota was also frequently reported when land plants are colonized by mycorrhizal fungus (Valentine et al. 2001; Rai et al. 2008). Unfortunately, no additional studies; for instance including light effects, have been conducted so far. Altogether, the results and the reasoning presented here suggest the existence of a unity in the response to light quality and quantity in photosynthetic organisms.

**References**


Résumé
En condition de stress, les organismes photosynthétiques réorientent leur métabolisme vers la production de métabolites d’intérêt. Cette thèse vise à fournir de nouvelles informations sur ces processus chez les algues et les plantes supérieures. La 1ère partie est consacrée aux effets de 3 éclairlements différents sur le métabolisme du carbone de la diatomée Phaeodactylum tricornutum. L’impact d’un éclairrement supérieur à 300 µmol photons m⁻² s⁻¹ (ML) est tout à fait différent de celui obtenu pour un éclairément de 30 µmol photons m⁻² s⁻¹ tant au niveau physiologique que moléculaire. Dans nos conditions, la carence en carbone constitue la cause principale de l’apparition de la phase stationnaire. La synthèse des lipides est plus élevée sous un éclairrement inférieur à ML. En revanche, la synthèse des protéines et de chrysolaminarin augmente respectivement sous fort et faible éclairlements. Les changements d’expression génique suggèrent que la conversion réversible du phosphoénol-pyruvate en pyruvate constitue une étape clé de l’orientation des intermédiaires dans les différentes voies de biosynthèse des molécules d’intérêt. L’état physiologique des cellules doit être considéré pour la comparaison d’échantillons. La 2ème partie du mémoire est consacrée aux effets de la quantité et de la qualité de la lumière délivrée par des LED (bleu, rouge, 70% de lumière rouge+30% de bleu et blanc) sur la régulation de la synthèse de métabolites secondaires chez 3 espèces de menthe collectées en plateau phase. Le taux de fixation du carbone constitue la cause principale de l’apparition de la phase stationnaire. La synthèse des lipides est plus élevée sous un éclairrement inférieur à ML. En revanche, la synthèse des protéines et de chrysolaminarin augmente respectivement sous fort et faible éclairlements. Les changements d’expression génique suggèrent que la conversion réversible du phosphoénol-pyruvate en pyruvate constitue une étape clé de l’orientation des intermédiaires dans les différentes voies de biosynthèse des molécules d’intérêt. L’état physiologique des cellules doit être considéré pour la comparaison d’échantillons.

Abstract
Under stress, photosynthetic organisms reorient their metabolism toward the production of high added value molecules. Regarding the importance of this process, it is surprising that the processes on which the reorientation relies are still not better understood. This thesis aims to provide new information regarding these processes. The 1st part of this thesis is dedicated to the effects of 3 different light intensities on the carbon metabolism of the diatom Phaeodactylum tricornutum. The impact of light intensities higher than 300 µmol photons m⁻² s⁻¹ (ML) were different from those obtained with 30 µmol photons m⁻² s⁻¹ at the physiological and molecular levels. Carbon deficiency was responsible for the occurrence of plateau phase in cultures. Except lag phase, lipid synthesis was higher under ML. In contrast, protein and chrysolaminarin syntheses increased under 1000 and 30 µmol photons m⁻² s⁻¹, respectively. Gene expression modifications suggest that the reversible conversion between phosphoenolpyruvate and pyruvate constitutes a key step for the orientation of intermediates to either high value molecules biosynthetic pathways. The physiological state of the cells should be taken into consideration when samples comparison is considered.

The 2nd part of the report is dedicated to the effects of light quantity and quality (blue, red, 70% red+30% blue and white light delivered by LED) on the regulation of essential oil synthesis in 3 Mentha species collected in nature. The light quality impacts the strategy of carbon utilization by the plant. Typically, red light was the most effective for stimulating the production of essential oil in Mentha sp. while carbon fixation capacity was similar to that found in other lighting conditions. Regardless the light intensity, Glomus mossae was the only arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus able to enhance additionally essential oil production.

Key Words
Phaeodactylum, Mentha, light intensity, LED, secondary metabolism, transcriptomics

Mots clés
Phaeodactylum, Mentha, intensité de l’éclairement, LED, métabolisme secondaire, transcriptomique